





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2022 with funding from  
University of Toronto

<https://archive.org/details/31761115512550>





# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIST

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

WASHINGTON, D.C. 20535

## STATEMENT OF

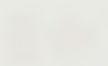
On January 10, 1955, the following statement was made by the  
Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and the United States  
Attorney General, J. Edgar Hoover, in response to a question  
asked by the House of Representatives, Committee on Un-American  
Activities, regarding the holdings of the FBI in the case of the  
H-Canada matter.

### HOLDINGS INCOMPLETE

One of the references mentioned in the statement was that the  
holdings of the FBI in the case of the H-Canada matter were  
incomplete. This was because the FBI had not yet received  
all the information it needed to make a final decision on the  
case. The FBI was still in the process of gathering the  
information it needed to make a final decision on the case.

In addition, the FBI was still in the process of gathering the  
information it needed to make a final decision on the case.

The Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and the  
United States Attorney General, J. Edgar Hoover, in response to a  
question asked by the House of Representatives, Committee on Un-American  
Activities, regarding the holdings of the FBI in the case of the  
H-Canada matter.



Department of Justice  
Federal Bureau of Investigation

Washington, D.C. 20535



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUÉ

INTERIM ARRANGEMENT FOR LAND MOBILE RADIO IN THE  
806 TO 890MHz BAND IN THE VICINITY OF THE  
CANADA-US BORDER

Government  
Publications

OTTAWA, January 20, 1977--By exchange of letters between the United States Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Department of Communications (DOC), an interim arrangement has been concluded to allow licensing of US land mobile systems in the 806 to 890 MHz band in the US within 250 miles of the US-Canada border.

Terms of the interim arrangement had been developed by a group from the Department of Communications and the FCC. This working group has been exploring technical options for sharing the use of the frequencies in the 806 to 890 MHz band by the two countries along the border.

In Canada, the 806 to 890 MHz band is allocated for UHF-TV broadcasting. In the U.S., the 806 to 890 MHz band is allocated to the land mobile service.

The interim arrangement allows the licensing of US land mobile radio stations in the vicinity of the border while fully protecting Canadian UHF-TV assignments in the band and preserving Canadian options for possible alternative uses of some or all of these frequencies.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The criteria set out in the interim arrangement to be used by the FCC in authorizing the establishment of US land mobile stations in the US in the vicinity of the Canada/US border are as follows:

1. Base stations will not be authorized in areas closer than 100 miles from the US/Canada border.
2. Within the zone 100 miles to 125 miles from the border, base stations will be authorized only after specific arrangements have been made between the FCC and the Department of Communications for the specific geographic area.
3. Within the zone 125 miles to 145 miles from the border, base stations may be authorized with the maximum of 500 watts ERP at 500 feet effective antenna height, or the equivalent.
4. Beyond 145 miles from the border, base stations may be authorized with the power and antenna heights permitted by the FCC Rules (1000 watts ERP at 1000 feet effective antenna height for "urban conventional" and "trunked" stations, and 500 watts ERP at 500 feet effective antenna height, or the equivalent, for "suburban conventional" stations).
5. Mobile stations will be authorized to operate at distances of 90 miles or more from the border. The maximum effective radiated power (ERP) for mobile units operating within the zone between 90 and 145 miles from the border must not exceed 200 watts. Land mobile systems will normally employ a duplex channelling plan so as to prevent mobile to mobile operations closer than 90 miles to the border.
6. Mobile units operating further than 145 miles from the border will be authorized to operate with powers prescribed by the FCC Rules.

(more)

7. All land mobile stations within 250 miles from the border will be authorized by the FCC on condition that they cause no harmful interference to Canadian TV stations operating in the 806 to 890 MHz band. American land mobile stations will not be afforded protection from interference originating from Canadian UHF-TV stations.

8. The FCC will notify the Department of Communications of land mobile radio assignments in the band within 250 miles of the border.

The interim arrangement will be reviewed, and, if necessary, its terms amended in approximately 12 months after the results of a joint study concerning anomalous radio wave propagation in the border areas are available.

CA1043  
-N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

EVERY COMMUNITY IN THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES

TO BE PROVIDED WITH TELEPHONE SERVICE

Government  
Publications

YELLOWKNIFE, NWT, January 22, 1977 -- Every community in the Northwest Territories will have basic local and long-distance telephone service within five years, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé today announced.

Under a major funding program, called the Northern Communications Assistance Program (NCAP) the Federal Government will contribute \$9 million over the next five years to cover the capital costs of the communications facilities between communities required to bring reliable long-distance telephone service to all communities in the Northwest Territories. Bell Canada and Canadian National Telecommunications, the two telecommunications companies providing service in the region, will invest a similar amount in capital and operating funds for local exchange equipment and for operating the telephone circuits between communities over the same period of time.

In announcing the program, Mme Sauvé said she was confident it will provide "reliable long distance telephone throughout the Northwest Territories with a technical quality comparable to that available in Southern Canada." This development is one result of a Federal Government Communications Policy for the Northwest Territories and the Yukon which sets out the principle that a minimum level of communications service be established as a priority at all communities throughout both territories.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

(more)



The provisions of NCAP will not affect the Yukon because all Yukon communities already have basic telephone facilities.

The long distance links to be funded through NCAP will be provided either through satellite ground stations or ground based circuits, whichever is the more economical means of serving a particular community.

Mme Sauvé said that the program is limited to providing only telephone service to these communities, because of current limitations on federal spending. However, satellite ground stations will be designed to accommodate CBC radio and television service, which can be added later as funds become available.

Mme Sauvé emphasized that the Government of the Northwest Territories would be offered the opportunity to play a full role in discussions on implementation schedules and priorities.

The Minister said the new program, in extending facilities to about 28 of the most remote communities in the country, will establish Canada as first among all Arctic nations in the provision of public telephone service.

The announcement of the NCAP program was made in Yellowknife today by Minister of Indian and Northern Affairs Warren Allmand, on behalf of Mme Sauvé.

Contact: John S. Davidson, Department of Communications  
Ottawa (613) 995-8079



## THE NORTHERN COMMUNICATIONS ASSISTANCE PROGRAM - BACKGROUND INFORMATION

### 1. Communication in the North

The 1970's have been a time of remarkable improvement in the quality of communications facilities available to northern residents. The process of change began in Yellowknife in September 1970 with the Northern Communications Conference. This conference marked the first time that people of various interests from the universities, different levels of government, native organizations and industry, including communications specialists, had gathered in the North to discuss with northerners the broad range of northern communications problems and to seek possible solutions. The Northern Communications Conference was part of the Tele-commission, a comprehensive Federal Government study of the existing state and future prospects of telecommunications in Canada. When the results of the Telecommission Study were published by the Department of Communications in 1971, they included a preliminary statement of communications requirements for the Canadian North and made a number of proposals for further study of possible ways of meeting these requirements.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Over the next few years, a number of follow-up studies were undertaken by the Federal Government, primarily within the Department of Communications, with the aim of developing a formal northern communications policy. In the meantime, however, considerable progress was being made in improving service to the public. As the result of a major new development in technology, the Anik I communications satellite went into service in January of 1973.

The extension of Anik Thin Route Service to communities in the NWT served by Bell Canada has been assisted by a five year commitment made by the Department of Communications in 1973 to guarantee Bell a minimum annual revenue of \$40,000 for each community. In 1975 the Department also supplied capital funding to Bell Canada for the provision of a temporary high frequency radio-telephone to Hall Beach. In addition, the Government of the Northwest Territories and the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development provided half the capital cost for a VHF radio facility to link the community of Arctic Bay to the Anik ground station serving Bell Canada at the nearby Nanisivik mine site. A further minimum revenue guarantee was provided by the Department of Communications in 1976 to permit the extension of Anik telephone service to Chesterfield Inlet. The year 1976 also saw the introduction of satellite telephone facilities for the first time in the western NWT area served by Canadian National Telecommunications, with the installation of Anik ground stations at Sachs Harbour, Holman Island and Snowdrift.

Moreover, during the period from 1972 to 1974, the Department of Communications carried out a Northern Pilot Project which established a community radio station, CKQN, at Baker Lake and a network of community owned high frequency radio-telephones linking six settlements in the Keewatin District.

(more)

The purpose of the Northern Pilot Project was to gain concrete experience at the community level in order to better define northern communications needs and to serve as a basis for future policy decisions. The policy formulation process also included a tour of the North in 1975 by the then Minister of Communications Gerard Pelletier, during which he had the opportunity to see some of the northern communications problems at first hand and discuss them with northerners from all walks of life. In addition, that year was marked by the extension of the Native Communications Program to the NWT and the Yukon by the Secretary of State, for the purpose of funding the activities of native communications societies. This program was established to enable the native peoples to operate their own facilities for communicating with each other and with Canadian society at large, while helping to reinforce their cultural unity and sense of common purpose in the face of rapid social change. The Native Communications Program is currently providing support in the Northwest Territories to the Native Communications Society of the Western NWT and to the Nunatsiakmiut group in Frobisher.

Minister of Communications Mme Jeanne Sauvé has also received valuable information and advice from northerners through exchanges of correspondence, face-to-face meetings, submissions to public bodies such as the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, and initiatives such as the Special Communications Report published in 1976 by the Inuit Tapirisat of Canada. The policy proposal which finally resulted from these many activities was thoroughly reviewed by an interdepartmental committee of officials which is part of the Advisory Committee on Northern Development, with active participation by representatives of the Governments of the Northwest Territories and the Yukon.

(more)

2. A Communications Policy for the Northwest Territories and the Yukon

This process led to Cabinet consideration and approval of a Communications Policy for the Northwest Territories and the Yukon. This new policy is an outgrowth of the Federal Government's Northern Development Policy for the 1970's which gives first priority to programs in support of a number of guidelines for social improvement. These guidelines include a requirement to strengthen communications links among communities in the North and between the people of the North and fellow Canadians in the South.

The Communications Policy for the Northwest Territories and the Yukon sets out the principle that a minimum level of communications services should be established as a priority at all communities throughout both territories, comparable to similar communities in the South, as public and private funds become available. In approving this policy, the Federal Government has accepted a commitment to encourage the development of programs to upgrade significantly the quality and quantity of communications in the Northwest Territories and the Yukon.

In proceeding from this policy framework to the development of a specific program in support of this goal, a number of conclusions were reached. With the Anik satellites an operational reality, it is now technically possible to bring good quality communications service to every community in the territories. The major difficulty in extending service is the high cost of the required facilities as compared to the limited revenues available to recover these expenses, and there is a limit to the level of losses which can reasonably be supported. It was therefore concluded that Government financial support is necessary to assist the telephone companies in extending reliable service throughout the territories.

(more)

After considering various alternatives, the Department concluded that a program of capital contributions would best provide for ease of management and equitable sharing of costs between the Government and the telephone companies. Other interested departments and agencies, including both territorial governments, were consulted in the preparation of this proposal which included provision for funding a portion of the capital costs of extending good quality communications service to all communities in the NWT and the Yukon.

However, the total Government funding requirement for both telephone and broadcasting services was too great to be accommodated at this time. Given the severe limits which have been placed on Federal Government spending, it has been decided to limit the new program to the provision of telephone service only, with CBC radio and television to be added in future when further resources become available. It is understood that the Government of the Northwest Territories shares the view that telephone service should have a higher priority than radio or television if such a choice is necessary. The Department believes that reliable long distance telephone links to all communities are a higher priority than radio and television facilities particularly because good telephone service can literally be a matter of life or death in emergency situations.

### 3. The Northern Communications Assistance Program

The Northern Communications Assistance Program (NCAP) will be administered by the Department of Communications and will consist of a program of contributions to cover the capital costs of the communications facilities between communities which are required to bring reliable long distance telephone service to all communities in the Northwest Territories.

(more)

This program will not affect the Yukon because all Yukon communities already have basic telephone facilities.

Under the Northern Communications Assistance Program the Federal Government will contribute approximately \$ 9 million in capital over the next five years. Bell Canada and Canadian National Telecommunications will invest a similar amount in capital and operating funds for local exchange equipment and to cover the operating costs for telephone circuits between communities over the same period of time.

The long distance telephone links to be funded by the Government under NCAP will be provided either through satellite ground stations or ground based circuits whichever is the more economic means of serving a given community. However, all facilities installed under this program will have to provide a minimum level of communications service equivalent to that available in southern Canada as called for in the Communications Policy for the Northwest Territories and the Yukon. The Government contributions will be paid to the company which establishes the new facilities. In the case of satellite service, payment will be made to Telesat Canada with the stipulation that the associated savings be passed on to Bell and CNT in the form of reduced leasing charges for the ground stations. For those communities to be served by ground based telephone circuits, Government financial assistance will be paid directly to the responsible telephone company.

Officials of the Department of Communications are currently engaged in negotiations with Bell Canada, CNT and Telesat in order to finalize the details of NCAP before entering into formal agreements with each of these companies.

(more)

When these discussions begin to focus on implementation schedules and priorities for serving individual communities, the Government of the Northwest Territories will be brought into the negotiations and offered the opportunity to play a full role in deciding these matters.

Bell Canada has recently completed the installation of local exchanges in all NWT communities in its service area, thereby enabling the public to make telephone calls from house to house within these settlements. CNT is also expected to continue making progress in providing local exchanges to the remaining unserved communities in its territory. Furthermore, in 1976 Bell Canada arranged for additional telephone circuits to be installed at ground stations in several NWT communities with more to be added this year; these measures will serve to reduce delays in placing calls via Anik facilities. In view of these developments, the next five years should see every community in the NWT provided with good quality telephone facilities including both long distance and local exchange service.

Although the Federal Government has, in the past, provided financial assistance to telephone companies in specific situations to facilitate extension of service to remote communities, this new capital program is unique. The initiative marks the first time that direct Federal Government funding has been provided on such a scale to permit the extension of public telephone service to communities anywhere in Canada. Current limitations on Federal spending do not permit an early start to be made on extension of CBC service, but any satellite ground stations installed to provide telephone service under the NCAP program will be designed to accommodate the future addition of CBC radio and television circuits at minimal cost.

(more)

The Northern Communications Assistance Program represents a large step forward in bringing modern communications services to the North. This initiative illustrates the way in which government and industry can work together to solve problems of mutual concern, and will serve as an example for future cooperation. The NCAP program will extend facilities to the most remote communities in the country and will establish Canada as first among all Arctic nations in the provision of public telephone service.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CAIC ps

-N26

## CANADA, EUROPE TO EXPLORE CLOSER CO-OPERATION IN SPACE PROGRAMS

Government  
Publications

PARIS, February 14, 1977 -- Canada is seeking closer cooperation with the European Space Agency (ESA) including joint programs to share in the use and development of space technology.

Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé is attending the ESA Council Meeting of Ministers in Paris as the official Canadian observer. While there, Mme Sauvé will inform European Ministers of Canada's space programs and suggest some ways in which closer co-operation could be achieved.

Mme Sauvé said that a reassessment of Canada's status with respect to the agency was timely, in view of the fact that Europe was fast developing an independent space capability. The development of joint space programs are invariably translated into real economic benefits to Canada, Mme Sauvé said, in terms of increased industrial contracts and employment in the space technology fields.

Canada and ESA have participated in past space programs, and with the United States, are currently developing the Aerosat experimental system, aimed at using satellites to improve trans-Atlantic air traffic control.

Mme Sauvé, in outlining current and future Canadian space programs, suggested to the Council that both ESA and Canada could benefit from closer cooperation. ESA and Canada are now expected to enter into detailed discussions to explore the nature of a strengthened relationship.

The desire for closer cooperation with ESA is an outgrowth of Canada's foreign policy which calls for the strengthening of commercial and economic links with Europe.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Member countries of the European Space Agency are:  
Belgium, Denmark, France, The Federal Republic of Germany, Italy,  
The Netherlands, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom and the  
Republic of Ireland. Norway, Austria and Canada are observers.

While in Europe, the Minister is also availing herself of  
the opportunity to meet key people in the communications field both  
in Great Britain and France.



NOTES FOR AN ADDRESS

BY THE HONOURABLE JEANNE SAUVÉ

MINISTER OF COMMUNICATIONS

AT THE FIRST MINISTERIAL MEETING

OF THE EUROPEAN SPACE AGENCY COUNCIL

FEBRUARY 14, 1977



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Thank you, Mr. Chairman, for your warm welcome and for your invitation to address the participants of this first ministerial meeting of the European Space Agency Council. We in Canada have followed your progress to date with keen interest and, on behalf of my country, I would like to take this opportunity to congratulate you on your achievements.

Canada's interest in Western Europe is long-standing, and the bonds between us have withstood the test of time. The values and traditions we share, the similarity of our political and social institutions, our ethnic origins and our steadily increasing economic interdependence are all important factors tending to bring our countries closer together.

In more concrete terms, less than one year ago Canada and the European Community forged an agreement on economic and commercial cooperation, the final link in a chain of contractual commitments. Because of the striking originality of its nature and its objectives, Prime Minister Trudeau was moved to call this contractual link "Canada's contribution to the vocabulary of cooperation". For my part, I would add that this link with the Common Market is but the most recent and most notable manifestation of our renewed desire to cooperate with Europe and the rest of the world.

In another vein, my visit last year to the facilities of the European Space Agency convinced me of the fact that Europe has developed an independent capability in space. Since we in Canada have long possessed valuable expertise in the field of space research and development, I felt that the time had come to reassess our status as an observer within the Agency, with the ultimate aim of joining our efforts to develop space programs of interest to us both.

I am therefore pleased to be able to inform you that I have been authorized to pursue exploratory talks with a view to determining satisfactory terms for upgrading our relationship with the European Space Agency - while maintaining, of course, our very fruitful partnership with the United States. Although I would not wish to prejudge the outcome of these talks, I would nevertheless like to add that some form of associate member status would undoubtedly best serve our respective interests at this stage of our relations.

There is no doubt that a community of interests already exists between the member countries of the European Space Agency and Canada in the field of space activities. Our task is to seek the most effective means of exploiting these common interests to our mutual benefit. But before I go on to deal with this question, it might perhaps be useful for me to briefly sketch a picture of Canada's space achievements and to say a few words about our current projects and plans for the future.

Alouette I, the first satellite designed and produced outside the United States or the Soviet Union, was launched by NASA in 1962. It was followed by three spacecraft of the same type, all designed and built by scientists in our Communications Research Centre in cooperation with Canadian private enterprise. Thanks to ISIS I and II, which are still fully operational, telemetry stations in Canada, France, Japan, Britain, Portugal, Australia and Norway continue to receive and analyse with ionospheric data.

In November 1972, Telesat Canada, an independent company in which the Government is a shareholder, scored an international first with the launching of Anik I. Through Anik I, Canada became the first country with a domestic telecommunications network based on geostationary satellites. This network, operated by Telesat Canada, now comprises three operational satellites and seventy earth stations which cover all of Canada from east to west and from north to south.

The third phase of Canada's space program was initiated in 1970 when the Government began the development of the Communications Technology Satellite (CTS), operating in the 12 to 14 GHz band. Because of its extremely high power, this satellite makes it possible to reduce considerably the size and cost of earth stations. Christened "Hermes", it was launched into orbit by NASA in January 1976.

Under a bilateral agreement with Canada, the European Space Agency contributed to this project by developing and supplying a number of key space hardware components. We have been singularly fortunate to have benefited from this contribution from your Agency to the construction of Hermes, and I am pleased to acknowledge this fact at your meeting today.

The fact that Canada has been involved in developing its own telecommunications systems does not mean that it has remained aloof from international satellite research programs. Like the European Space Agency, Canada is taking a very active part in the American space shuttle program. Under an agreement between the National Research Council of Canada and NASA, signed in July 1975, Canada undertook to design, develop and deliver to the United States by 1979 a major component of the shuttle - the remote manipulator.

Furthermore, the Canada Centre for Remote Sensing, whose task is to ensure more efficient management of our natural resources, already has close and productive ties with the European Space Agency and its member countries.

Canada has an interest in ESA programs as well. When the European Space Agency was formed, Canada was granted observer status and was invited by the Agency to participate in its deliberations. This participation has not only made it possible for excellent relations to be maintained between our countries in the field of space programs, but has also generated closer cooperation in a number of experimental programs to which I referred earlier.

Canada, of course, does not intend to limit itself exclusively to this type of cooperation. We believe that if our relations with the Agency are strengthened, we will be better equipped to undertake jointly the development and implementation of space programs which we consider of common interest.

Canada, therefore, is particularly pleased with the agreement on scientific and technical cooperation which the Canada Centre for Remote Sensing is about to conclude with the European Space Agency. Specifically, the Centre hopes to cooperate with the European Space Agency in developing microwave systems which will make it possible to penetrate fog and cloud cover.

In addition, with respect to future European earth observation programs exploiting the visible and infra-red wavelengths, we would like to stress the benefits that would accrue from the alignment, in so far as possible, of the systems planned by Europe and the United States as well as other nations.

As part of its telecommunications program, the Agency plans to implement over the medium term a program aimed at developing a platform capable of carrying a variety of payloads, which could be used to provide direct television and radio broadcasting. Canada, which through its Hermes satellite has made a firm commitment to the future development of a direct broadcast satellite, is now in the process of putting the finishing touches to a study designed to demonstrate the feasibility of a similar type of platform. It would be useful if we could, in due course, exchange information and cooperate in this work.

There are a number of other Canadian projects which will no doubt be of interest to the Agency.

For example, we are looking forward to the development of a multi-purpose telecommunications satellite to meet the growing needs of the Canadian government to communicate with mobile teams, aircraft and ships as well as to retransmit data from ground read-out stations. It has been demonstrated that this system is technically feasible and that the cost would be acceptable to potential users.

Preliminary tests conducted by Canada's Communications Research Centre has indicated that for a relatively modest sum, a satellite in low-altitude polar orbit would be able to pinpoint, to within ten kilometres, the position of an aircraft in distress in Canada or elsewhere in the world. Moreover, this system could pick up signals from conventional emergency radio beacons already in mandatory use on board aircraft in Canada and the United States.

I would like to touch briefly on the role of Canadian industry and facilities in ESA programs, in the event that we find it mutually advantageous to strengthen the ties between Canada and your Agency.

Canadian manufacturing industries and operating companies in the electronics and telecommunications sector have participated in many national and international projects employing earth and space communications technology. Through these undertakings, they have demonstrated their competence in the design and manufacture of earth stations and satellites of all types. Accordingly, the Government of Canada, in indicating its intention to increase its participation in European space programs, is hoping to obtain for its industries, as a quid pro quo and in proportion to its financial contribution, benefits such as those currently enjoyed by European industries.

Canada also has certain facilities which we would be happy to place at the ESA's disposal should this prove advantageous to both parties.

For example, in Ottawa, we have equipment capable of testing the operation of subsystems by subjecting them to heat, vacuum and vibration tests, and we have plans to expand these facilities substantially. In addition, in Ottawa and the far North we have telemetry and command stations which were established under the ISIS and CTS programs. These, of course, are over and above those used by Telesat Canada for its domestic satellite communications network. There is also a station in the Prairies which is being operated at present by our Canada Centre for Remote Sensing.

Also among our available facilities are several rocket launching sites. We have a small mobile pad, but our main launching facility is located in Churchill on the west shore of Hudson Bay. For the past several years, this launching site has been used by researchers from Canada, the United States and other countries around the world.

We are also in the process of building, for the purposes of our new balloon research program, a mobile pad which will enable us to launch the huge balloons used in stratospheric research.

European as well as Canadian researchers may avail themselves of these resources, should this be considered mutually desirable.

A brief glance at the overall picture shows that Canada already has a great deal of experience in space programs. Moreover, I would venture to say that, in the extremely active field of satellite communications, Canada has a wealth of expertise and resources that might well be the object of world-wide envy.

It is on the basis of this expertise that Canada wishes to build closer ties with the European Space Agency. We already share areas of common interest, and there is no reason to believe complementary and reciprocal programs of mutual benefit will not result from our future relations. I personally feel that if all this is considered in the light of Canada's foreign policy, which calls for the strengthening of our political and trade relations with Europe, there is good reason to approach with optimism the preliminary talks on the renegotiation of Canada's status within the European Space Agency.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Government  
Publications

OTTAWA,

MARCH 1, 1977

## CANADIAN SATELLITE CHALKS UP IMPRESSIVE RECORD

--Doctors in an urban university medical centre assist with Canada's first satellite-aided childbirth, at an isolated Northern hospital.

--Students at Ottawa's Carleton University and Stanford University in California share live lectures, flashed instantly between the two campuses, over a 45,000-mile earth-space-earth link.

--Canadian and American radio astronomers achieve a major step forward in techniques for determining the size and shape of distant galaxies.

These events represent but a small sample of the thousands of hours of experimental transmissions that have been beamed in the last year through Canada's "HERMES," the world's most powerful communications satellite.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Canadian-designed, Ottawa-built satellite, first to operate in a new frequency band, at power levels 10 to 20 times higher than those of other satellites, was launched by NASA from the Kennedy Space Centre in Florida January 17, 1976. Its high power makes it possible to use much smaller and far less expensive earth stations.

Named after the Greek god of science and eloquence, the \$60 million HERMES has already met the primary mission objectives set out for it by the Department of Communications and NASA, when they undertook the joint program to build, orbit and experiment with the most advanced communications tool ever to be sent into space. It is now more than half-way through its design lifetime of two years.

About three dozen experimenter and user groups (20 in Canada; some 15 in the U.S.) share use of the satellite on an alternate day basis, to conduct applications experiments in fields including telemedicine, tele-education, government administration and operations in remote areas; broadcasting technology; radio astronomy; community interaction; emergency communications and maintenance of library and public broadcast networks. HERMES has shown that a high-quality color TV picture can be delivered to a mini-earth station with a dish antenna no bigger than a child's saucer-shaped toboggan.

In Canada, 18 of 26 experiments have met their prime objectives. Representatives of about three-quarters of the experimenter groups are expected to be represented at a meeting here today, to exchange experiences and plans and discuss tentative findings in their pioneer explorations of new ways to put space communications technology to work in the 1980s.

(more)

They include the University of Western Ontario (telemedicine and computer-aided instruction in native languages); University of Quebec (satellite links between widely-separated campuses) Hydro-Quebec (clock synchronization); the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (applications of HERMES-types satellites for radio and TV broadcasting); Memorial University of Newfoundland (continuing medical education) and the Ontario Government (multi-ministry administrative and operational experiments).

Results of the HERMES communications experiments program will enable government and other planners to assess social, economic, technological and other factors to be taken into account in planning the satellite services of tomorrow.

#### New Telemedicine Trial

With \$124,000 in financial assistance from the federal department of communications, Memorial University of Newfoundland will soon begin a 12-week assessment of satellite links between its St. John's campus and hospitals in St. Anthony and Stephenville, Nfld., as well as Goose Bay and Labrador City, Labrador. Memorial's faculty of medicine and its educational television centre will use HERMES for 4 to 6 hours a day, on alternate days, to telecast programs in anaesthesia, cardiology, therapeutics, communications and developmental disorders in children and nursing education. The links will also be used for transmission of medical data and consultation, public health instruction and workshops for social workers on child abuse and neglect.

(more)

The university's telemedicine experiment will be inaugurated about April 1, with an eight-point tele-press conference linking the Communications Research Centre (CRC) in Ottawa with the four hospitals and three Memorial campus locations involved in the experiment.

Other HERMES projects still underway, or about to commence, include the Carleton-Stanford course exchange program; the Alberta Native Communications Society's evaluation of satellite-delivered interactive broadcasts amongst remote communities and the federal Public Service Commission staff training via satellite experiment.

In addition to demonstrating the capabilities of Canadian industry in the design and fabrication of advanced space systems, HERMES has achieved all flight performance specifications for its NASA-developed 200-watt transmitting tube and demonstrated a novel three-axis stabilization system for spacecraft with flexible appendages.

Ref:

J.M. Bryan

(613) 995-8185

596-9687

#### NOTE TO EDITORS

An informal media briefing will be held by HERMES experimenters and DOC space program officials at 4.45 p.m. today, Tuesday, March 1, at the Government Conference Centre. Reporters and cameramen will be escorted from the main entrance, off Rideau Street.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## FEDERAL-PROVINCIAL COMMUNICATIONS MEETING

EDMONTON, March 18, 1977 -- The Council of Communications Ministers, made up of Federal and Provincial Ministers responsible for communications, is scheduled to meet in Edmonton March 29-30, 1977.

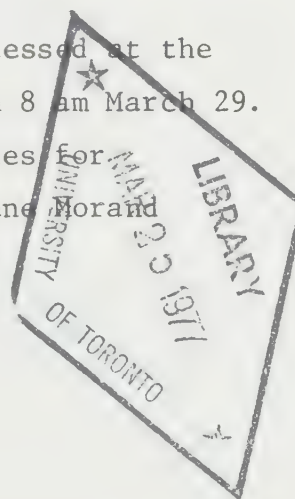
The announcement was made today by Federal Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv , and Alberta Minister of Utilities and Telephones, Dr. Allan A. Warrack, who are co-chairing the meeting.

The Ministers are expected to discuss matters of mutual interest including proposed revisions to federal communications legislation, arrangements for sharing responsibilities for cable television, telecommunications interconnections, pay television, and provincial entry into general broadcasting.

The Council of Communications Ministers was established at the last meeting of Ministers responsible for communications held in July, 1975.

- 30 -

NOTE: Accreditation for journalists will be processed at the Provincial Museum Building, Edmonton, from 8 am March 29. For further information regarding facilities for journalists, contact Lise Couchman or H l ne Morand at (613) 995-2341.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## NEW COMMUNICATIONS LEGISLATION INTRODUCED

OTTAWA, March 22, 1977 -- New telecommunications legislation, designed to streamline federal regulation of telecommunications in Canada and to make it more responsive to rapidly changing technology and to provincial concerns was introduced today by the Federal Government.

Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv   termed the legislation "a milestone in the evolution of communications in Canada".

The legislation, to be known as the Telecommunications Act, will consolidate and clarify existing federal legislation.

It will replace four existing statutes and parts of two others by a single body of national telecommunications law.

Madame Sauv   said the Act will establish a clear demarcation between the functions and responsibilities of the Government and the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission. In addition it contains specific statutory mechanisms which will allow interested provincial governments to contribute to the development of national telecommunications policy.

"It will provide for more effective regulation by the Commission of telecommunications carriers subject to federal jurisdiction and it will facilitate the orderly development of telecommunications in Canada by providing for more effective means of harmonizing federal and provincial planning and regulatory activities".

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist  re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Telecommunications Act is the second phase of a two-step legislative process. Phase I, which came into force on April 1, 1976, amalgamated the former Canadian Radio and Television Commission and the Telecommunications Committee of the Canadian Transport Commission into a single regulatory body, the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

Under the Telecommunications Act, the CRTC will continue to regulate and supervise the activities of all broadcasting undertakings in Canada, as well as those telecommunication common carriers which are subject to federal regulation.

Madame Sauvé said that three new features of the legislation are particularly important.

First, the bill opens with a clear statement of national telecommunications policy. The policy, developed in consultation with provincial governments, will serve as a basis for decisions taken by the CRTC, the Governor in Council and the Ministers. The policy consists of 16 objectives covering all aspects of telecommunications, including systems and services, broadcasting, radiocommunications and research. The first statement reads: "efficient telecommunications systems are essential to the sovereignty and integrity of Canada, and telecommunication services and production resources should be developed and administered so as to safeguard, enrich and strengthen the cultural, political, social and economic fabric of Canada".

Second, the Act will allow the Minister of Communications, with the consent of the Governor in Council, to enter into agreements with the provinces and gives the Governor in Council the power to authorize the sharing of certain federal regulatory functions with provincial agencies. Madame Sauvé said that the significance of this feature is that it now provides a mechanism for harmonizing federal and provincial communications objectives.

Third, the bill empowers the Governor in Council to issue broad policy directions to the CRTC with respect to the national telecommunications policy. Madame Sauvé emphasized that the Act does not, however, authorize the Governor in Council to issue directions to the CRTC with respect to the issue, amendment or renewal of particular broadcasting licences, the content of broadcast programming, the application of standards of quality to broadcasting programming or the restriction of freedom of expression.

Madame Sauvé stressed that the provisions of the existing Broadcasting Act relating to the role and status of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation are essentially unchanged in the new legislation.

The policy considerations underlying the proposed Telecommunications Act have been extensively discussed with provincial governments, federally regulated telecommunications carriers and other interested parties over the past three and a half years, Madame Sauvé said. A Green Paper containing tentative legislative proposals was published in 1973 and a Grey Paper containing more specific legislative proposals was published in 1975 by the Federal Government.

The Telecommunications Act will replace the Broadcasting Act, Telegraphs Act, the CRTC Act, the Radio Act and those provisions of the Railway Act and the National Transportation Act which apply to telecommunications.

A summary of the Telecommunications Act is attached.

Reference: John S. Davidson  
(613- 995-8079)

## TELECOMMUNICATIONS ACT -- A SUMMARY

Phase II telecommunications legislation, to be known as the Telecommunications Act, will consolidate and clarify existing federal legislation so as to establish a single coherent embodiment of national telecommunications law.

The proposed Telecommunications Act will replace in toto the existing Broadcasting Act, CRTC Act, Radio Act, and Telegraphs Act, as well as those provisions of the Railway Act, and National Transportation Act which apply to telecommunications.

Part I of the bill (SS.2-14), is particularly important in that it enunciates a national telecommunications policy on which must be based all discretionary decisions taken by the regulatory body, the Governor in Council or Ministers (S.3). This statement of national telecommunications policy was developed in consultation with the provincial governments. This general Part also contains a description of the respective areas of responsibility of the Minister of Communications and of the Secretary of State of Canada (S.6 and S.8). In addition, it empowers the Governor in Council to authorize the sharing of federal regulatory functions or responsibilities with provincial agencies pursuant to federal/provincial agreements negotiated by the Minister of Communications (S.7), to issue broad policy directions to the CRTC (S.9), and to set aside or refer back specific decisions of the Commission (S.11).

Part II (SS.15-31) of the proposed legislation provides for the continuation of the enlarged single federal telecommunications regulatory body which came into existence when the Phase I telecommunications legislation was proclaimed in force on April 1, 1976. Under the Phase II legislation, the CRTC will continue to regulate and supervise the activities of all broadcasting undertakings in Canada, as well as those telecommunication common carriers which are subject to federal regulation (B.C. Telephone, Bell Canada, CN Telecommunications, Telesat, and Teleglobe). This Part also contains the important section (S.27) pertaining to the conduct of public hearings by the Commission, and includes a new permissive clause under which provision could be made for participation in one of the Commission's public hearings by a member of a provincial regulatory body (S.27(5)).



Part III (SS.32-40) outlines the regulatory powers of the CRTC with regard to broadcasting transmitting and broadcasting receiving undertakings (CATV). These regulatory powers are essentially unchanged from those which now exist under the Broadcasting Act.

Part IV (SS.40-55) defines the role and status of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation. Only minor technical amendments have been made to the counterpart provisions in the Broadcasting Act. Similarly the policy objectives in S.3 which are specifically applicable to the CBC (S.3(j) and (k)) are the same as those in S.3 of the Broadcasting Act.

Part V (SS.55-62) will give the CRTC much more flexible and precise powers of regulation over the federally regulated telecommunication carriers than currently exist under the somewhat outdated provisions of the Telegraphs Act and the Railway Act. Explicit powers of the regulatory body to order such things as extension of service, terminal and systems interconnection, and pole attachment, may be found in S.55. The power in S.56 relating to new entry and major extensions is new: it is intended in part to deal with the issue of intercarrier competition which is of considerable interest to provincial governments. Similarly S.59 relating to new acquisitions, disposals and incorporations by federally regulated telecommunication carriers is a new power: a counterpart provision exists in the National Transportation Act but it applies only to transportation companies.

Part VI (SS.63-68) contains an updated version of the Radio Act and those parts of the Telegraphs Act which relate to submarine cables. One new provision in this part provides for the delegation by the Minister of Communications to designated department officials, of the power to suspend radio station licences for a period of 30 days.

Part VII (SS.69-76) contains the enforcement provisions and is based upon the comparable provisions of the various statutes which are being replaced.

Part VIII (SS.77-84) is self-explanatory: it contains the necessary transitional provisions providing for the continued existence of the CBC, CRTC, and their respective rules, regulations and by-laws.

March, 1977

CA/Cφ8  
-N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

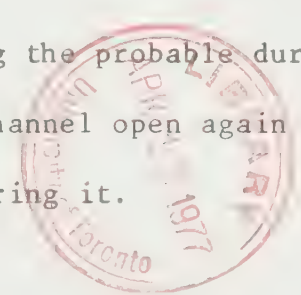
## SPECIAL CB EMERGENCY CHANNELS FOR BC, YUKON TO BE DESIGNATED

Government  
Publications

VANCOUVER, March 22, 1977 -- Two General Radio Service (CB) channels are to be designated, effective April 1, for possible pre-emption for the exclusive use of official emergency communications operations in British Columbia and the Yukon, the federal Department of Communications announced today.

CB channels 13 and 23 (27.115 and 27.255 Megahertz) in the expanded, 40-channel frequency band to come into use nationally on that date may, at the discretion of any responsible municipal, provincial or federal emergency organization or official (such as a mayor or police chief), be taken over for the duration of such operations as marine rescues or land searches. Channel 13, already in use by marine auxiliaries of the B.C. provincial emergency program and the Coast Guard and others involved in sea rescues, will be used for marine purposes. Channel 23 will be designated for such land operations as search coordination activity.

Channel takeovers would commence upon the transmission of a message from a responsible radio or other emergency officer, specifying the probable duration of the emergency pre-emption. He would declare the channel open again for normal CB use at the conclusion of the operation requiring it.



(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



CB channel 9 (27.065 MHz) is already protected by regulation as an emergency and calling channel, but its use for extended operations is unsuitable. Although any other channel could be used, the department is specifically designating channels 13 and 23 to ensure availability of at least two, recognized frequencies. Departmental monitoring stations will assist in enforcement of the new procedures and any CBer refusing to vacate a designated channel after being informed it is in use for an official emergency operation could face loss of his or her licence.

The fact that the channel designation is being introduced in the Pacific Region only does not preclude extension of the plan to other areas of Canada at some future time.

Ref: Bill Hamilton,

Vancouver - (604) 666-3494



CA1 c68  
-NZ6

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

LIBRARY  
OF TORONTO

Government  
Publications

## NOTICE TO GRS USERS

OTTAWA, March 29, 1977 -- Users of the General Radio Service (GRS, or CB as it is commonly known) are reminded by the Department of Communications that the number of channels available to them will be increasing from 22 to 40 on April 1.

This additional spectrum now is occupied by licensees in the Private Commercial Land Mobile Service. Although encouraged to apply for new frequency assignments, they have been given the option of remaining on their present assignments until they find it convenient or necessary to re-locate. The department will not provide interservice interference protection. In the interim period, GRS licensees using channel 23 and above are requested to co-operate where possible with existing licensees on these frequencies.

Those who use the General Radio Service are required to have a licence from the Department of Communications. All GRS equipment licensed in Canada must continue to conform to Canadian technical standards.

- 30 -



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

NEW TELEMEDICINE TRIAL UNDER WAY IN NEWFOUNDLAND AND LABRADOR

Government  
Publications

ST. JOHN'S, NFLD., April 7, 1977 -- A major experiment in satellite telemedicine, including both upgrading courses for doctors and nurses and community health instruction for laymen, was officially launched here today.

Memorial University of Newfoundland is making use of HERMES, Canada's experimental communications satellite, for a 12-week program. The experiment will link the university's medical faculty and educational television centre with St. John's General Hospital and four smaller, local hospitals in comparatively isolated locations --- Stephenville and St. Anthony and the Labrador communities of Goose Bay and Labrador City.

The telemedicine experiment will feature high-quality satellite television and audio links, with one-way video from St. John's to each of the four smaller communities and two-way audio to and from each. The links will be used for continuing medical education lectures, mini-courses for nurses and allied health professionals and community health programs intended for direct consumption by the public in each community.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Continuing medical education programmes will cover anaesthesia, cardiology, therapeutics, and communications and developmental disorders of children. Community health education will include pre-natal instruction in nutrition, child development and breast feeding; nutrition for diabetics; and seminars for social workers on child abuse and child neglect. Transmission of medical data and associated consultations will also be evaluated.

The design and provision of medical services for the populations of these and similar centres, widely scattered over the rugged terrain of Newfoundland and Labrador, is complicated by a harsh climate and greatly-varying standards of transportation and communications. For example, it is often difficult or impractical to leave when resident doctors or patients want to obtain updating courses or specialists' services in larger communities.

The federal communications department is providing \$124,000 in direct financial assistance to the project, as well as free satellite time for four to six hours a day on alternate days and use of small, portable earth stations.

Dr. Max House, assistant dean (continuing medical education), Faculty of Medicine, and W.C. McNamara, assistant director, Educational Television Centre, Memorial University, are principal investigators on the experiment.

It's one of a package of 26 applications experiments which began soon after the Jan. 17, 1976 launch of the spacecraft from Cape Canaveral, Fla. Experiments cover telemedicine, tele-education, community interaction, the technology of broadcasting, provision of government services in remote areas and other fields.

An earlier telemedicine experiment, linking University Hospital in London, Ontario, with Moose Factory General Hospital on James Bay, wound up in February. The Ontario government, another HERMES experimenter, is also evaluating use of HERMES-type satellites for provision of certain medical services.

HERMES operates in a new frequency band, with transmitted signals 10 to 20 times stronger than those of conventional satellites, making it the world's most powerful communications satellite.

Ref:

J.M. Bryan, Ottawa

(613) 995-8185 or 596-9687

\*"Telemedicine," a comparatively new term, is simply a marriage of the words "telecommunications" and "medicine" and refers to the provision of any medical service by wire, radio or other electromagnetic system. The long-established practice of sending electrocardiograms over telephone wires is a simple, rudimentary form of telemedicine. Satellite technology offers greatly broadened horizons in the field.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Government  
Publications

## CANADIAN-DRAFTED PLAN WILL GUIDE SATELLITE BROADCASTING IN THE AMERICAS

OTTAWA, April 13, 1977 -- A Canadian-sponsored plan for guiding the development of direct broadcasting and other new generation satellite systems to serve the Americas was agreed to at a recently-concluded world administrative radio conference of the International Telecommunication Union, in Geneva, Switzerland.

Operating on new frequencies in the 12 Gigahertz band such broadcasting satellites are expected to be ready to begin beaming television and other signals direct to homes equipped with small earth stations about the mid-1980s. In addition, for the Americas, this frequency band will permit the point-to-point communication of data, voice and other communications to very small earth stations, like those used by Canada's experimental HERMES satellite system. HERMES has demonstrated the feasibility of direct broadcasting from satellites.

The countries of Africa, Asia, Europe and the South Pacific -- coping with current pressures to use the band for terrestrial microwave services, as well as to provide for potential requirements of the broadcasting satellite service -- adopted detailed plans which have allocated specific frequencies and orbital positions to specific countries.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The countries of the Americas, not under the same pressures for terrestrial services, but having to share this band with the fixed satellite service (which involves relaying signals point-to-point between limited and specific ground stations), decided on a different, two-stage plan proposed by Canada.

Its first phase is the setting aside of two segments of the geostationary orbit arc (a circle, 22,300 miles above the equator, at which satellite orbits match the rate of the earth's rotation beneath them) for use by 12 GHz broadcasting satellites. Two other segments will be used by the fixed satellite service.

Broadcasting satellites serving the Americas will be located from 75 to 100 and from 140 to 170 degrees, west longitude. Fixed service satellites are to have positions just east of 75 degrees and between 100 and 140 degrees. For service to Canada, the U.S. and Mexico, the first arc for broadcasting satellites is restricted to 75<sup>0</sup>W to 95<sup>0</sup>W longitude.

As a second phase of the plan, the countries of the Americas will meet at a regional conference, to be held not later than 1982, to develop a detailed frequency and orbital plan of the type worked out by the rest of the world at the Geneva conference.

Canada signed the final acts of the five-week conference on February 13.

Ref:

G.C. Brooks (613) 992-2215



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## OTTAWA RESEARCH TEAM HONORED FOR REVOLUTIONARY SATELLITE AMPLIFIER

OTTAWA, May 31, 1977 --Seventeen scientists and technicians employed at the Communications Research Centre (CRC) of the Department of Communications, just west of Ottawa, have shared a \$2,500 public service incentive award for their "exceptional and distinguished" contribution to Canada's HERMES satellite project.

Starting from scratch, late in the program (when it was found no industrial supplier in the U.S., U.K. or elsewhere could be found who would commit himself to the specifications, tight schedule and cost constraints involved to build the necessary electronic hardware), the CRC team designed and built the spacecraft receiver's novel field effect transistor amplifier (FETA). It was among the first 12 GHz F.E.T. amplifiers ever developed, and the first designed and qualified for a space application. HERMES, an experimental, advanced technology communications satellite, was launched Jan. 17, 1976. It is the world's most powerful.

Thirteen of the group honored by the Public Service Incentive Award Board received cheques and certificates from Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé, during a recent visit to CRC.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The CRC FETA project was kicked off in November, 1973. The first prototype amplifier, making revolutionary use of then experimental gallium arsenide (GaAs) field effect transistors, was ready the following July. Despite extremely tight deadlines, considerable time and effort had to be expended ensuring the reliability of the new solid state devices and other, integrated circuit components.

The effort paid off. To date, no problems have been encountered with the vital HERMES amplifiers. And a Canadian company, SED Systems Ltd., of Saskatoon, Sask., is using the technology in its earth stations.

Spar Technology Ltd, of Montreal, which participated in the amplifier development, has also benefitted from the know-how generated, by providing F.E.T. amplifiers for subsequent transponder business. It is working on Telesat Canada's next spacecraft, ANIK-B. The new Telesat satellite will be the first commercial spacecraft to fly with the technology.

Ref: J.M. Bryan

(613) 995-8185



CA 068  
7/26

Government  
Publication

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, June 1, 1977 -- Federal Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé today made public the text of a letter which she has sent to Harry Boyle, Chairman of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, concerning the communications agreement which was signed by the Federal Government and the Province of Manitoba on November 10, 1976.

This agreement recognized federal responsibility for the regulation and supervision of all programming services, including Pay TV, distributed on cable systems in Manitoba and at the same time affirmed provincial responsibility for the regulation and supervision of all other telecommunication services distributed within the province by the Manitoba Telephone System. The agreement would also allow cable television operators to lease from the Manitoba Telephone System the cable and other equipment required to distribute signals through the streets and lanes into individual homes.

Following the signing of this agreement, the Governor-in-Council set aside a number of CRTC decisions awarding cable television licences in Brandon, Portage La Prairie and Selkirk, in order to allow the CRTC to start afresh, to ensure that the introduction of cable television into these three communities took account of the new federal-provincial agreement.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



In commenting on this agreement in a public notice of December 30, 1976, which called for new applications for cable television licences in these three communities, the CRTC raised a number of questions concerning the effects of the agreement.

In her letter, Mme Sauvé points out that the Canada-Manitoba agreement flows from a long-standing federal communications policy aimed at establishing co-operative arrangements between the federal and provincial governments in areas such as cable television.

Mme Sauvé also points out that the agreement contains extensive guarantees designed to protect the integrity of the Canadian broadcasting system. In particular, it ensures that the CRTC's licensees will continue to be accountable to the Commission for the programming services they are licensed to provide and ensures that they will be able to extend both the range of services they offer and the area they serve, if so licensed by the Commission.

In her letter, Mme Sauvé expresses the hope that all concerned will recognize that the agreement responds to "one of the chief challenges in the communications field, as in many other areas of Canadian life... to demonstrate that federal and provincial interests can be harmonized and accomodated within the framework of our existing institutions".





Minister of Communications

Ministre des Communications

Ottawa K1A 0C8

MAY 31 1977

Mr. H.J. Boyle  
Chairman  
Canadian Radio-television  
and Telecommunications Commission  
100 Metcalfe Street  
Berger Building  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0N2

Dear Mr. Boyle:

I am writing further to our discussions on the subject of the agreement which was concluded by the Government of Canada and the Province of Manitoba on November 30, 1976, and to the considerations relating to this subject which were raised in the Commission's Public Notice of December 30, 1976. I thought it would be useful to clarify the provisions of this agreement as it relates to certain aspects of the general communications policy which the Federal Government has pursued for the past several years, particularly in respect to matters affecting cable television.

As you are aware, many of the central issues of communications policy in Canada were discussed in some detail in the Green Paper entitled "Proposals for a Communications Policy for Canada", published in March, 1973, and in the Grey Paper entitled "Communications: Some Federal Proposals", published in April, 1975. One general conclusion drawn in both these papers was that, in order to attain national communications policy objectives, it would be desirable to establish co-operative arrangements between the federal and provincial governments in policy areas where jurisdiction either overlapped or was unclear, and where converging communications technologies made it undesirable to assign responsibilities on the basis of hardware configurations alone. The Grey Paper suggested in particular that federal and provincial aspirations could best be achieved by agreement between the two levels of government, in which each party would recognize and provide for the interests of the other within its own sphere of competence.

Although the provincial governments may have differing aspirations with respect to the development of cable systems, I believe many of these interests are generally similar across the country and that, in any case, we all share one core objective in this matter: to ensure that cable television develops in a way that preserves and enhances the integrity of the Canadian broadcasting system. This comment applies equally to cable systems which distribute broadcast signals and to cable systems which provide broadcast-related services, without making use of over-the-air transmissions.

For these reasons, the Federal Government stated in the Grey Paper that if it received a guarantee from any province, regarding the protection of the Canadian broadcasting system, in the form of "an agreement explicitly accepting federal authority to impose criteria or conditions on any undertaking offering any form of 'programming' for distribution on coaxial cable systems, in addition to the technical certification of any radio-receiving apparatus used by such systems", it would be willing "to negotiate arrangements with regard to the common use of coaxial cable and other facilities so as to ensure the orderly and economical development of broadband-cable systems".

The Province of Manitoba indicated its willingness to give the Federal Government this guarantee for the protection of the broadcasting system, in exchange for a Federal commitment to allow CATV operators to lease local broadband distribution facilities (excluding studio and headend equipment) from the Manitoba Telephone System, and to provide for the common use of these facilities by programming and other services. Following extensive consultations and negotiations, an agreement to this effect was signed on November 10, 1976.

Article I of this agreement contains a definition of "programming" and "programming services", which is of particular importance to the agreement as a whole. The definition sets out a series of criteria which must be met if a service is to be defined as programming.

On the basis of this definition, the agreement goes on to state in Article II that "the regulation and supervision of programming services, including programming services distributed in Manitoba over or by means of facilities or apparatus of the (Manitoba Telephone System) are exclusive responsibilities of Canada". The definition of "Canada" contained in Article I makes it clear that the term includes "any agency designated by Canada to exercise authority on its behalf". It is, of course, the Commission which would be responsible for carrying out the regulatory and supervisory function assigned in this Article. Cable licensees who lease facilities from MTS under the terms of this agreement will, therefore, continue to be directly accountable to the Commission for the programming services they provide.

I would also point out that, because of specific reference to pay television in the definition of programming, the agreement clearly indicates the Province's intention to recognize the Commission's authority in an area where, depending on the nature of the hardware arrangements employed, some question exists as to which level of government has regulatory authority. I believe that this Article of the agreement represents a guarantee that coaxial cable facilities will not be used in Manitoba in a manner prejudicial to traditional broadcasting services.

Article III of the agreement states that "the regulation and supervision of telecommunication services, other than programming services, distributed in Manitoba by means of facilities and apparatus of the Agency are exclusive responsibilities of the Province". The major implication of this Article is that, in Manitoba, services to the home other than programming services will be provided on a common carrier basis and regulated by the Province.

With respect to the future use and development of already-existing cable systems and with a view to protecting the integrity of the broadcasting system, Article VIII of the agreement commits the Province to taking the measures necessary to ensure that sufficient telecommunications capacity is made available to distribute all programming services which the Commission authorizes. This Article further guarantees that the distribution of programming services has priority over other services in the use of telecommunications capacity. I would expect that this priority guarantee would be reflected in any contract between the Manitoba Telephone System and CATV operators in Manitoba.

As to the extension of cable systems to areas which are not now served, Article IX of the agreement affirms that "the determination of the timing and conditions for the introduction of programming services into various localities in Manitoba remains the responsibility of Canada". Under this article the Province and the Federal Government are obliged to cooperate to ensure that programming services are provided in an orderly manner. This guarantee, coupled with the guarantee to provide channel capacity to authorized programming services on a priority basis contained in Article VIII, will ensure that the Commission's licensees will be able to extend their service areas as required.

As well as requiring recognition of federal authority over programming services, the proposals advanced in the Grey Paper underlined the importance of further guaranteeing the integrity of the broadcasting system through federal certification of any radio-receiving apparatus used by such systems. Accordingly, Article VII of the agreement affirms that "the enactment and/or application of minimum technical standards in regard to facilities and apparatus used for the provision of programming services remains the responsibility of Canada".

In addition to providing guarantees for the integrity of the broadcasting system, the Agreement will also have an effect on the operations of cable television licensees and on the quality of service which they can offer to their subscribers. Article VI provides that the Province will take the steps necessary to ensure that any disputes between operators and the telephone company as to terms, rates or conditions of lease will be adjudicated by its Public Utilities Board with a view to determining what is just, reasonable and in the public interest. I believe that this procedure offers a suitable guarantee that the rate which licensees pay to MTS for the lease of facilities will be in the best interests of the people of Manitoba. I further believe that it represents a step forward for cable operators in Manitoba since, regardless of the particular regulatory framework which existed prior to the Canada-Manitoba agreement, CATV operators have had to make whatever contractual arrangements they could with MTS, without having clear recourse to an adjudication procedure.

Finally, I share the Commission's concern that CATV operators be able to respond to and solve customer service complaints. However, I have not commented on this matter, as I believe that it would be more appropriately dealt with in any contract for lease of facilities which might be concluded by MTS and the Commission's licensees. I am also aware that the Commission has a number of concerns relating to such matters as the negotiation of cost sharing arrangements among its licensees and their ability to identify and separate the costs of distribution and microwave facilities. In my opinion, these concerns are not affected by the provision of the Canada-Manitoba agreement.

I hope that the foregoing remarks have sufficiently explained the nature, intent and scope of the Canada-Manitoba agreement and that the Commission will now be in a position to hear applications for CATV licences in Manitoba with a clear understanding of the implications of the hardware ownership arrangements contemplated in that agreement. Although these arrangements differ from those which the Commission has heretofore considered necessary for maintaining the integrity of the broadcasting system, I believe that the Agreement provides for a series of guarantees on the part of the Province which will ensure that the Commission remains able to pursue this overall objective, and that its licensees will continue to exercise the degree of control over their cable distribution systems which is essential to achieving the objectives set for them by the Commission. I should add that Mr. René Toupin, the Minister responsible for communications for the Province of Manitoba, concurs with the remarks which have been made in this letter interpreting the provisions of the Canada-Manitoba agreement.

In conclusion, I think it should be recognized that, although the Government and the Commission share a common interest in protecting the integrity of the broadcasting system and ensuring that it achieves its statutory objectives, we do not claim that exclusive federal responsibility for all the facilities is necessary

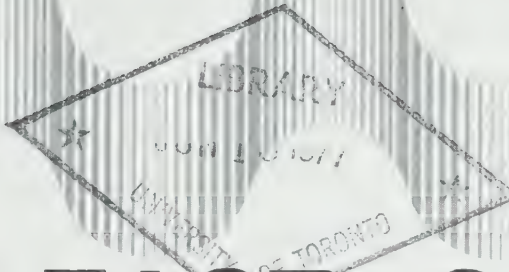
to achieve these objectives. We now find ourselves at a time when one of the chief challenges in the communications field, as in many other areas of Canadian life, is to demonstrate that federal and provincial interests can be harmonized and accommodated within the framework of our existing institutions. I think that the Canada-Manitoba agreement is an important illustration of this, and would hope that all parties concerned see it in this light.

Yours sincerely,

Not signed by  
Original signed by

(Mme) Jeanne Sauvé





# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Official Visit to Europe by the Federal Minister of Communications

OTTAWA, June 3 , 1977 -- The Federal Minister of Communications, Madame Jeanne Sauv , will make an official visit to France June 6 to 8, 1977 at the invitation of France's Secretary of State for Posts and Telecommunications, M. Norbert S gard. M. S gard extended the invitation when the two Ministers met briefly in Paris in February following Madame Sauv 's participation in the Meeting of Ministers of the Council of the European Space Agency (ESA).

Madame Sauv 's visit to France reflects a continuing effort by the two governments to further cooperation in the field of telecommunications and is one of a series of Canadian initiatives which have been taken to strengthen in very concrete ways economic, political and cultural relations with European nations. Telecommunications, particularly with the advent of satellite and computer communications, has become an increasingly important element of international relations and the two ministers will, among other things, review the progress made towards overcoming the technical problems of compatibility in communications systems through the use of agreed international standards.

Their discussions will centre on developments which have taken place since M. S gard met with Madame Sauv  in Ottawa last October. During the course of that visit, Madame Sauv  and M. S gard agreed upon a number of scientific, technical and industrial areas of telecommunications in which cooperation would be beneficial to Canada and France. Officials of both governments have subsequently pursued specific approaches in

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



these areas. As an example, a number of Canadian telecommunications industry executives and officials of the Departments of Communications and Industry, Trade and Commerce recently met with their French counterparts to explore the possibilities for industrial cooperation. As a result of this meeting, additional discussions are to take place over the next few months to look in greater detail into the opportunities identified and to expand mutual awareness of possible areas of cooperation.

While in Europe, the Minister of Communications will meet on June 9 with the Secretary-General of the International Telecommunication Union (ITU), Mr. M. Mili, at the Union's Geneva headquarters. Madame Sauvé will exchange views with Mr. Mili on current ITU activities of interest to Canada. The ITU, which has a membership of 153 countries, is a Specialized Agency of the United Nations. Its objective is to harmonize international telecommunications through the international allocation of the radio frequency spectrum and through the establishment of regulations and recommended standards designed to facilitate the smooth operation of international telecommunication services.

Canada has been a member of the ITU since 1907 and continues to participate actively in the major activities, conferences and meetings of the Union. Canada has been elected a member of the ITU's Administrative Council since the Council was formed in 1947.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, June 6, 1977--Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  has met with a group representing the views of more than 20,000 petitioners who have expressed dissatisfaction with the amount of violence and pornography on television and their effects on children.

Mme Sauv  said the petition was further evidence of growing public concern over violence on television.

The petition, organized by the Crossroads Circle Square group in the Hamilton, Ontario area was presented to the Minister by the group's leader Mr. G. Rutledge. It reads:

"We, the undersigned petition the Government of Canada, The Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, and the Broadcasting Industry, to take more seriously their responsibility to protect our children from exploitation by producers and sponsors of violence, pornography and commercial products, and to take greater action in the implementation of safeguards for our children".

Mme Sauv  said that the issue is a matter of considerable concern to her. At the same time, she said, "I am troubled by the problems it raises in regard to broadcasters' freedom of expression and possibilities of censorship."

Mme Sauv  said that the Department of Communications is currently studying the issue as a matter of priority and that in the near future, she would be in a position to announce concrete proposals for discussion with the broadcast industry, advertisers and the public to help combat the incidence of violence on television.

- 30 -



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

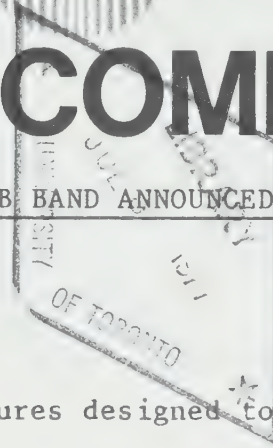
Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## NEW MEASURES TO IMPROVE CB BAND ANNOUNCED



TORONTO, June 17, 1977 --- Further measures designed to improve the General Radio Service (CB band) were announced tonight by Ross Milne, M.P., parliamentary secretary to federal Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé, at a symposium on General Radio Service at York University.

With half a million licences in force, up to one and a half million Canadians now use CB radios. The explosive growth in popularity of CB has brought with it problems such as channel congestion and over-crowding, improper operation by some users and interference with television sets and other home entertainment equipment, Mr. Milne said.

Among the measures announced to improve the General Radio Service are the following:

-- A system of temporary permits and call signs will be implemented which will allow a person to use a CB set legally for 60 days, while his or her licence application is being processed by the department. At present, the owner of a new CB set must wait until obtaining a regular licence before transmitting, and, because licences are being processed at a rate of

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



several thousand a month, delays sometimes occur.

-- A public information program is planned to promote user awareness of and respect for regulations governing the use of CB in Canada. The program will consist of films, exhibitions, hot line and talk show appearances by departmental personnel and a revised edition of a GRS operating handbook which will soon be provided free to all new CBers.

-- The department will institute a computerized licensing system on a trial basis in British Columbia whereby those applying for CB licences will mail in their application to a central location. The trial will be evaluated to see whether a national computerized licensing system would be feasible.

-- The department proposes to amend regulations made under the Radio Act to control or prohibit sale, possession and use of linear amplifiers (external radio power boosters connected to CB radios to illegally raise their output). Linear amplifiers are sometimes the cause of interference. Under the new regulations, CBers would also be required to permit inspection of their stations at any reasonable time, or face the possibility of a fine or licence revocation.

"Of course, that troublesome minority of deliberate and habitual offenders won't be too impressed" by these measures, said Mr. Milne, noting complaints about violations of the regulations were rising sharply. Mr. Milne said prosecutions and licence suspensions would probably have to be used against some individuals.

To relieve over-crowding and help reduce the potential of CB sets for involvement in interference complaints, DOC has already tightened technical standards for equipment and expanded the number of channels available from 22 to 40, effective April 1, 1977.

The department is also increasing its efforts to persuade manufacturers and importers of TVs, stereos, electronic organs, tape recorders and similar audio devices to voluntarily incorporate simple, effective and inexpensive design improvements to render their products less susceptible to interference from CB and other sources.

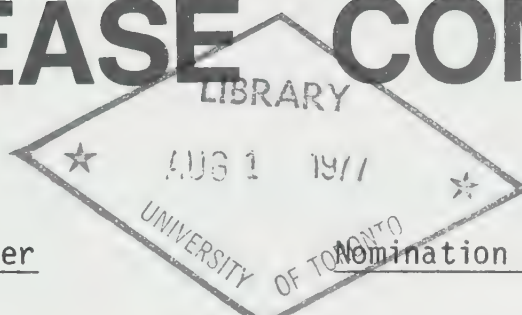
Mr. Milne appealed to General Radio Service Clubs represented at the symposium to help the department in its efforts to get the message of responsible CB operation across to as many people as possible.

He said DOC hoped to initiate a process of "creative dialogue" with users and the general public through such symposia. The explosive growth of CB has been a challenge to the department, Mr. Milne said. While implementing these measures, the department will continue to study the phenomenon of CB with a view to the future administration of the service.

Ref: J.M. Bryan

(613) 995-8185

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE



## Appointment of CRTC commissioner

## Nomination d'un commissaire au CRTC

OTTAWA, July 18, 1977 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  today announced the appointment by Order-in-Council, of Ronald A. Irwin as a part-time commissioner of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

OTTAWA, le 18 juillet 1977 -- Le ministre des Communications, Madame Jeanne Sauv , annonce aujourd'hui la nomination par d cret de Monsieur Ronald A. Irwin au poste de commissaire   temps partiel au Conseil de la radiodiffusion et des t l communications canadiennes.

Mr. Irwin, 41, a graduate of University of Western Ontario and Osgoode Law School, is a former mayor of Sault Ste. Marie, Ontario and has been involved in municipal affairs for several years. The appointment, effective July 14, 1977, is for a period of five years.

La nomination de M. Irwin pour une p riode de cinq ans, est entr e en vigueur le 14 juillet 1977. Ag  de 41 ans, il a fait ses  tudes   l'Universit  Western Ontario et au Osgoode Law School de l'Universit  de Toronto. M. Irwin a  t  maire de Sault Ste-Marie (Ontario) et s'est occup  des affaires municipales pendant plusieurs ann es.

-30-

-30-



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

LIBRARY

AUG 23 1977

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

Report on public message telegraph service

released by Department of Communications

OTTAWA, August 17, 1977 -- "The future evolution of the public message telegraph service in Canada must be opened to public consideration at this time in view of its continuing decline and the rapid introduction of more competitive telecommunications services," says Jeanne Sauvé, federal Minister of Communications.

The Minister made the remark upon release of a report prepared by the Communications department that says the decline is expected to continue, putting further strain on the future of the service.

Operating costs of the domestic telegraph service operated by the CNCP Telecommunications exceeded revenues by an estimated \$3 million in 1975 and by a forecasted \$5 million in 1976.

The Minister said, however, that the service remains a valuable option in the range of telecommunications available to Canadians and to some an important service difficult to replace.

No recommendations are contained in the report as to how the service should evolve but a number of factors are raised that should be considered, it says, in any future evolution of the service.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The report is based on a survey carried out last November following complaints and representations by users, unions, elected officials and others about telegraph offices being shut down in some locations and about the quality of service in general. CNCP has responded to declining use of the service and higher operating costs by phasing out some offices and cutting back on the hours other offices are open. In the period 1970-75, the total number of offices and agents handling telegrams decreased from 1199 to 426. Where telegraph offices have been phased out customers may phone toll free to the nearest office.

CNCP employees asked every twentieth customer questions concerning the service. More than 3,000 telegraph customers were interviewed in person and over the phone. Madame Sauvé said she appreciated the co-operation of CNCP management and employees in conducting the survey, which forms the basis of the DOC report.

Other findings of the report:

- the number of overseas cablegrams (most of which are transmitted overseas by Teleglobe Canada which interconnects with CNCP facilities in Canada) has remained relatively constant over the 1971-75 period;
- the number of money transfers, which account for about five per cent of telegrams, has remained relatively stable. About 80 per cent of money transfers are filed by non-business customers;
- the number of employees in the telegraph service dropped to 1,080 in 1976 from 9,997 in 1961;

- Canada is a signatory to international agreements governing the international telegraph service;
- business messages accounted for 62 per cent of all telegrams;
- small, one operator offices, mostly in small communities, representing more than 60 per cent of the offices in service, process less than five per cent of messages filed by customers;
- 68 per cent of telegraph messages were filed by phone, 24 per cent by Telex and less than eight per cent over the counter;
- 92 per cent of customers said if the telegraph service was not available, they were likely to try other methods of communications but which might not adequately satisfy their needs. Eight per cent said they had no alternative to the service. Most of the latter involved money transfers.

- 30 -

Copies of the report can be obtained from:

Information Services

Department of Communications

300 Slater St.

Ottawa

(613) 995-8185

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Statement by the Minister of Communications, the Honourable Jeanne Sauvé, with respect to the Telecommunication Regulatory Service

Ottawa, October 3, 1977 -- The Government of Canada has instituted a program for decentralizing its services with a view to achieving certain key economic, social, cultural and administrative objectives. The program is aimed at transferring a number of government services out of large metropolitan centres and the National Capital Region to areas where the degree of economic activity and the employment situation require such support.

A Treasury Board task force has been working in consultation with all departments to identify those services and functions that might be relocated under the program. Already several administrative units have left the National Capital Region for various parts of the country. As part of an overall plan drawn up by the government - a plan being announced today by my colleague, the Honourable Jean Chrétien - it has been decided to relocate the Telecommunication Regulatory Service in Quebec City.

At the present time, the Service comprises 221 positions. Of these, many are filled by engineers and technicians who are highly specialized in the field of telecommunications. This team, I am proud to say, has acquired a most enviable reputation both at home and abroad. I therefore hope that the largest possible number of the present incumbents of these positions will choose to pursue their careers within the Department, in the new human and geographic context which they are being offered. Those who choose not to move to Quebec City, however, may rest assured that the federal government intends to offer them every possible opportunity of obtaining other jobs in the Public Service.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The move will be completed in 1981 or 1982. Staff will be compensated for the expenses incurred through the move according to the terms worked out through negotiations between the Treasury Board and the employees' unions. These terms will be announced shortly.

My colleague, the Honourable Jean Chrétien, in making public this government program this morning, gave the following clarification:

"Any relocation of a unit of the Federal Public Service involving a significant number of an official language minority (relative to its destination) will not be made until, through permanent arrangements with the receiving province, it can be ensured that the children of federal employees can be educated in the Official Language they are accustomed to use."

I am convinced that the decision made by the Government will lead to a more equitable distribution of resources and to a broader expansion of the economic progress throughout the regions of Canada. It is for this reason that I am confident that the staff of the Department of Communications will willingly cooperate in the realization of the program.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Visit to Canada by the Secretary-General of the International  
Telecommunications Union

---

OTTAWA, October 4, 1977 -- The Secretary-General of the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), Mohamed Mili, will make an official visit to Canada October 6-7. He was invited by the federal Minister of Communications, Honourable Jeanne Sauv , during her visit to ITU Headquarters in Geneva, June 9.

During his visit, the Secretary-General will meet with Mme Sauv  to discuss work of the 1979 World Administrative Radio Conference and the next Plenipotentiary Conference of the ITU. Mr. Mili will also hold talks with the President of the Canadian International Development Agency, Michael Dupuy, to discuss technical cooperation projects in the field of telecommunications with developing nations, including Canada's participation in establishment of a Pan-African telecommunications network. He will also meet senior officials of the Department of External Affairs to discuss the role of the ITU in the UN. Finally, meetings will be held with the Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce, concerning Canada's possible participation in the International Telecommunications Exposition in Geneva in 1979.

The ITU, composed of 153 member countries, is a specialized agency of the UN. It seeks to coordinate international telecommunications, through assignment of radio spectrum frequencies at the international level, establishment of regulations and formulation of recommendations on international telecommunications standards and services.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada . . . 2  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185





Canada has been a member of the ITU since 1907 and participates actively in its main activities, conferences and meetings. Canada has also been an elected member of the ITU Administrative Council, since its creation in 1944.

The visit of the Secretary-General is part of a regular program of consultations between the ITU and bodies in both the public and private sector, which have an interest in telecommunications.

Invitation to Reporters

Reporters are invited to meet the Secretary-General of the ITU, Mr. Mohamed Mili, and the federal Minister of Communications, Honourable Jeanne Sauvé, to learn more of the subjects mentioned in this press release.

An informal meeting will be held Friday, October 7, from 10 a.m. to 10.45, in the Minister's Office, Room 2004, 300 Slater Street. Certain arrangements must be made for this meeting and all those interested are asked to confirm their attendance with Yves Roy (996-7706) or Gilles Bourassa (995-8883) before 3 p.m., Thursday, October 6.



CAI  
CO 8  
-R27

Gouvernement  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

STATEMENT BY  
MINISTER OF COMMUNICATIONS  
JEANNE SAUVE  
IN RESPECT OF  
AN ORDER-IN-COUNCIL  
TO VARY CRTC DECISION 77-10  
AND TO APPROVE  
A PROPOSED AGREEMENT  
FOR MEMBERSHIP BY TELESAT CANADA  
IN THE TRANS-CANADA TELEPHONE SYSTEM.

THURSDAY, NOVEMBER 3, 1977



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



On August 24, 1977, the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission handed down a decision in which it disallowed a proposed agreement whereby Telesat Canada would become a member of the Trans-Canada Telephone System (TCTS).

The Governor-in-Council has decided to vary this decision, in such a way as to approve the proposed agreement between Telesat and TCTS. Accordingly, an Order-in-Council to this effect was passed today, under Section 64(1) of the National Transportation Act.

The Government has further decided that, because of the complexity of the case, this statement should be issued, as a full explanation of its position on the matter.

It is vital that it be emphasized that the action just taken was dictated by broad issues of public policy, which lie beyond the reasonable purview of the CRTC. Having taken note of all petitions and submissions received, the Governor-in-Council has varied the decision of "his own motion," and not in response to any particular submission received.

The action of the Governor-in-Council should be taken as neither an expression of agreement with, nor an endorsement of, the views of any interested party. I emphasize, again, that this action reflects the broad policy of the government with respect to fostering satellite communications service for Canadians.

The CRTC decision reflects the CRTC's view of policy considerations, such as the powers and autonomy of Telesat, the availability and expansion of satellite service, and impact on competition.

But the range of factors affecting these policy issues is far wider than that which the CRTC could reasonably have been expected to consider. Many of these issues lie well beyond the purview of the Commission. Because adequate statutory mechanisms through which the Government could have provided clear policy guidance to the CRTC are not yet available, the Commission was unable to accord these policy matters due consideration. The Government's conclusions have accordingly reflected its view of these broader issues, while taking full account of the views of the CRTC and all interested parties who either participated in the hearing or have since made representations to the Governor-in-Council.

I also wish to point out -- and I will have more to say on this in a few moments -- that the agreement will not supersede the authority of the Commission to regulate common carriers and determine such matters as rates for service and the terms and conditions under which carriers who are not members of TCTS may obtain service from Telesat.

A particular and urgent concern of the Government is the future of Canada's domestic satellite services.

The usefulness of our current generation of ANIK satellites will end, through normal limits on their lifespan, in the early 1980s. The time factors inherent in planning and procuring the next generation of satellites are now critical.

Satellites are essential elements in communications service in the North and in other isolated areas. It is expected that new technology satellites will permit new health, educational and social services to become available on an economic basis. In the absence of the increased utilization envisaged under the proposed agreement, and the revenues arising therefrom, service to these areas would become very much more costly. Moreover, to abandon the next series of satellites, or to delay them, would mean the loss of contracts for Canada's space industries, with resultant adverse effects on employment in this sector.

Furthermore, through internationally recognized procedures, Canada has been coordinating orbital parking spaces for the ANIK-C series of satellites. To protect these positions, we must have an active implementation program, evidenced by planned satellite replacements. The Government was not prepared to risk the possibility of Canada losing these crucial orbital positions: it regards satellite service as an increasingly essential element in Canada's telecommunications infrastructure.

The Government weighed the feasibility of asking Telesat Canada and TCTS to explore ways of modifying the agreement, in such a way that the terms would meet the concerns of the CRTC, while still assuring to Telesat the revenues upon which commercial financing arrangements necessarily depend. But this approach would have prolonged the period of uncertainty. The attendant delays could have an immediate and serious impact on the procurement of new-generation satellites. Moreover, the feasibility of the parties reaching an acceptably-modified agreement did not seem probable, in view of past experience and the facts at hand. The realization of the existing agreement required extensive and detailed negotiations between Telesat and TCTS. Furthermore, it should be noted that the agreement, in its present form, has received the support of most of the provincial governments which regulate TCTS members.

The Government is also of the view that the alternative of direct Government financing or guarantees is not acceptable. Furthermore, adequate government financing is not feasible under existing legislation. Accordingly, the Government decided that the agreement already reached between Telesat and TCTS was the most appropriate means whereby Government policy could be implemented, provided the valid concerns of the CRTC could, at the same time, be suitably met.

In deciding to vary the CRTC decision, the Government reviewed the statutory powers of the Commission to deal with the regulatory situation it perceived as arising from the proposed association. While recognizing some potential regulatory difficulties, the Governor-in-Council is of the view that adequate regulatory powers exist and can be used effectively, although it might be necessary to devise new regulatory techniques to meet

the complexities introduced by the association. In any event, even in the absence of the Telesat/TCTS agreement, the Commission would be faced with some additional complexities, as satellites become more integrated with terrestrial facilities in Canadian telecommunication systems.

The Government wishes to stress that its approval of this Agreement does not in any way deprive the CRTC of its regulatory power under the Railway Act. More particularly, the approval of the Agreement:

-- will not affect the power of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission under subsection 320(2) of the Railway Act to approve or not to approve rates charged by Telesat Canada;

-- will not affect the power of the Commission under subsection 320(7) of the Railway Act, to order Telesat Canada to provide access to its facilities upon such terms and conditions as the Commission deems just and expedient;

-- will not affect my powers as Minister of Communications under the Radio Act with respect to the operations of earth stations and associated terrestrial radio relay facilities.

In its review of submissions made at both the hearing and subsequently, and in its consideration of the policy concerns expressed by the CRTC in its decision, the Government concluded that, with the Telesat/TCTS agreement going into effect, it should review the matter of ownership of satellite earth stations, to identify instances where non-Telesat ownership could be in the public interest. At present, Telesat Canada directly owns all earth stations in its system. The time is now ripe for reconsideration of the advantages and disadvantages of this situation, from a public interest point of view, and with the objective of encouraging the fullest access to new satellite services. On the basis of developments which have occurred

in recent months but, more importantly, those we can foresee in the future, we are inclined to the view that some changes might become necessary. However, such a question will require an in-depth examination, such as I am proposing, before any decision can be made.

In addition, the Government considers that the long-standing policy of Telesat to lease only complete channels on its satellites should now be revised. It has concluded that it could be to the benefit of the public that regulated Canadian telecommunications carriers should be able to lease less than complete channels, if they wish, and if the CRTC decides that such arrangements are appropriate.

The Government continues to hold the view -- as it always has -- that Telesat is a complement to, not a competitor with, existing telecommunications carriers, and that a closer association with these carriers must develop if efficient, effective integration of satellite and terrestrial facilities is to be ensured, thereby making new services available to Canadians at the lowest possible costs.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Appointment of CRTC Commissioner

OTTAWA, December 2, 1977 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  today announced the appointment by Order-in-Council, of R. MacLeod Rogers as a part-time commissioner of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

Mr. Rogers, 51, a graduate of Queens University and Dalhousie Law School has practised law, formerly in Halifax and currently in Digby, N.S., and is active in community associations. The appointment, effective December 1, is for a period of five years.

- 30 -

## Nomination d'un commissaire au C.R.T.C.

OTTAWA, le 2 d cembre 1977 -- Le ministre des Communications, Madame Jeanne Sauv , annonce aujourd'hui la nomination par d cret de Monsieur R. MacLeod Rogers au poste de commissaire   temps partiel au Conseil de la radiodiffusion et des t l communications canadiennes.

La nomination de M. Rogers pour une p riode de cinq ans est entr e en vigueur le 1<sup>er</sup> d cembre. Ag  de 51 ans, il est dipl m  de l'Universit  Queens et de l' cole de Droit de l'Universit  Dalhousie. Il a pratiqu  le droit, tout d'abord   Halifax, puis   Digby, en Nouvelle- cosse, et il est membre de plusieurs associations communautaires.

- 30 -



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## LICENSING OF SATELLITE EARTH STATIONS UNDER REVIEW

OTTAWA, December 12, 1977 -- The Department of Communications is to review its policy with respect to licensing satellite earth stations, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today.

Formal notice of the review appeared in the December 10 edition of the Canada Gazette, Part 1.

The announcement follows a November 3, 1977, decision of the Governor-in-Council which approved an agreement whereby Telesat Canada, Canada's domestic satellite communication carrier, would join the Trans-Canada Telephone System, an association of telephone companies. At that time, Mme Sauv  said she wished to re-examine the policy whereby Telesat Canada owns all of the earth stations in its system. Such a re-examination, she said, would identify cases where non-Telesat ownership could be in the public interest and encourage the fullest access to new satellite services.

Under the Radio Act, all satellite earth stations must be licensed by the Minister.

The review will apply only to the policy with respect to licensing earth stations used for domestic satellite services -- that is, those originating and terminating in Canada.

Interested parties may make representations to the Department concerning any factor related to the review. Mme Sauv  said that since the issue was important to the development of satellite communications in Canada, she expected that the announcement of the review would precipitate a healthy public response.

- 30 -



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## RELEASE OF A DISCUSSION PAPER ON CANADIAN SPECTRUM ALLOCATIONS IN THE 406 TO 960 MHz FREQUENCY BAND



OTTAWA, December 12, 1977--Because of growing demand for radio services and increasing congestion of certain portions of the radio spectrum, the Department of Communications has carried out an examination of radio spectrum use in the 406 to 960 Megahertz band.

As part of this examination, the Department invited submissions from all interested parties or organizations concerning spectrum allocations in this frequency range in Canada in a news release and a notice in the Canada Gazette, Part I, both dated August 21, 1976. Submissions received have been used to arrive at an approach, outlined in a discussion paper, for proposing changes to the present Canadian allocations.

This paper entitled "A Discussion Paper on Canadian Spectrum Allocations in the 406-960 MHz Frequency Band" may be obtained from the Department of Communications, Information Services, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0C8 (613-995-8185) or from departmental regional offices in Vancouver (604-666-8530), Winnipeg (204-985-4144), Toronto (416-966-6276), Montreal (514-238-2177) and Moncton (506-858-2094). A notice on the availability of the discussion paper is to appear in the Canada Gazette, Part 1, on Dec. 17, 1977.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

(more)

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Submissions concerning the discussion paper will be accepted and should be addressed to the Director General, National Telecommunications Branch, at the above address and must be postmarked within 90 days of the Gazette notice. Copies of these submissions will be made available for public inspection at the Department of Communications library, Room 1420, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa and at all of the DOC regional offices listed above.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, December 16, 1977 -- Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  says she is prepared to enter into discussions with Quebec in the field of communications.

In remarks taped for broadcast on the Radio-Canada television program "La politique f d rale" for Saturday, December 17 at 11 p.m., Mme Sauv  said these discussions, however, must be based on "a clear perception of the responsibilities that rest with both levels of government".

In a judgement handed down two weeks ago, the Supreme Court of Canada had confirmed federal jurisdiction in respect of the regulation of cable television.

The federal minister said that even before the Supreme Court decision, discussions had already been held or agreements signed with several other provinces and she said she would certainly be willing to consider any serious proposals from the province of Quebec.

Mme Sauv  cautioned, however, that the federal government considers telecommunications and broadcasting as crucial to the forging of a strong national awareness and to the economic development of the country.

-30-



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, December 20, 1977 -- Federal Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  and Manitoba Minister responsible for communications Edward McGill met in Ottawa today to discuss matters of mutual interest. Among the items discussed was the implementation of the Canada-Manitoba agreement in the field of cable television.

This is the first time the Ministers have met since Mr. McGill assumed his current post two months ago.

The federal minister has met bilaterally with all provincial ministers responsible for communications, and a federal-provincial conference of ministers responsible for communications is tentatively scheduled for next March as a continuing process of discussion and coordination in communications matters.

OTTAWA, le 20 d cembre 1977 -- Le Ministre f d ral des Communications, Madame Jeanne Sauv , ainsi que son homologue du gouvernement du Manitoba, Monsieur Edward McGill, ont eu des entretiens aujourd'hui,   Ottawa, sur des sujets d'int r t commun. Ils ont discut  entre autres de la mise en oeuvre de l'accord Canada-Manitoba portant sur la t l vision par c ble.

C'est la premi re rencontre du genre entre les deux ministres depuis que M. McGill assume ses nouvelles fonctions de ministre responsable des Communications depuis deux mois.

Madame Sauv  a d j  eu des entretiens bilat raux avec chacun des ministres provinciaux responsables des communications et une conf rence f d rale-provinciale de ces ministres est pr vue pour le mois de mars prochain. Il s'agit de poursuivre des discussions en vue d'une coordination en mati re de t l communication au Canada.

- 30 -

- 30 -



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Appointment of CRTC Commissioner

OTTAWA, December 23, 1977 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé today announced the appointment by Order-in-Council of Mrs. Edythe Goodridge as a part-time commissioner of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

Mrs. Goodridge, 40, a graduate of the Ontario College of Art and the University of Toronto, has been a freelance commentator for the CBC, Woman's Editor for the St. John's Daily News and was also the Extension Services representative on Memorial University's CTS Committee. She is currently the Curator of the Memorial University Art Gallery and Assistant Director of Extension Services. The appointment, effective December 23, is for a period of five years.

-30-

## Nomination d'un commissaire au C.R.T.C.

OTTAWA, Le 23 décembre 1977 -- Le ministre des Communications, Madame Jeanne Sauvé, annonce aujourd'hui la nomination par décret de Madame Edythe Goodridge au poste de commissaire à temps partiel au Conseil de la radio-diffusion et des télécommunications canadiennes.

La nomination de Mme Goodridge pour une période de cinq ans est entrée en vigueur le 23 décembre. Agée de 40 ans, elle est diplômée de l'Ontario College of Art et de l'Université de Toronto. Elle a été pigiste pour Radio-Canada, Rédactrice des pages féminines au journal St. John's Daily News et déléguée des Services de l'éducation permanente au Comité du STT de l'Université Memorial. Elle est présentement conservateur à la Galerie d'Art de l'Université Memorial à St. John's, Terre Neuve, ainsi que Directeur adjoint des Services de l'éducation permanente.

-30-



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## COMPLETION OF FEDERAL/PROVINCIAL TELEPHONE STUDY

PROVINCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND

JAN 27 1978

026

St. John's, Newfoundland, January 13, 1978 --- Federal Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  and the Honourable James Morgan, Minister of Transportation and Communications for Newfoundland today announced the completion of a joint Federal/Provincial Study relating to the quality of telephone service in the Province of Newfoundland.

The study covered a period of one year and was a joint effort of the Federal Department of Communications, and the Provincial Department of Transportation and Communications with the full co-operation of the Newfoundland Telephone Company (NTC), Canadian National Telecommunications (CNT) and the Labrador Telephone Company.

The primary objective of the study was an assessment of the quality of telephone service in the province, and a comparison of the service between different parts of the province in similar areas served by NTC and CNT. The study involved:

- (1) A subscriber opinion survey of 1248 households in 319 communities to obtain their impressions of the telephone service being provided. 183 of the communities surveyed are served by CNT, while the remaining 136 are served by NTC. (The Labrador Telephone Company serves only Labrador City and was not included in this part of the study).



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



- (2) A survey involving regular quantitative measurements of performance criteria relating to telephone service. This consisted of a collection of data provided over a period of one year by the telephone companies and involved all areas of the province.

The two parts of the study were further augmented by visits to more than 50 communities throughout the province by members of the study team during the course of the survey.

The study found that service appears to be marginally better in NTC territory on an overall basis, than it is in CNT operating territory. However, it was also noted that CNT has a preponderance of non-urban areas, which are more difficult to serve, in relation to total service, when compared with NTC served areas. This accounts in part for the overall NTC performance being more in line with the overall industry performance, than is the performance of CNT.

The study also identified that the NTC provides essentially 1 and 2 party service to all subscribers, whereas there are still a number of multi-party lines in areas served by CNT. Nevertheless, despite the fact that Newfoundland experiences a larger percentage of rural telephone households than any other province, they enjoy an above average percentage of telephones on 1 or 2 party service, and a below average percentage of telephones on party lines with 4 or more subscribers. The matters of service delays and other problems common to the industry in non-urban areas appear no worse in Newfoundland than in the remainder of the country generally. However, it must be recognized that the problems are emphasized when accompanied by lack of access by road, by inclement weather conditions, relatively sporadic transportation and by isolation.

Since the beginning of the study, continued expansion of microwave, switching equipment and cable installations, have contributed to an improving trend in performance. For example, a significant improvement visible to the public followed the installation of an electronic office in Gander by CNT. Similarly, improvements accompanied the extension of microwave in Labrador by NTC.

It is anticipated that the study will be used in the consideration of performance standards, and in the continuing efforts of the telephone companies to maintain their progress in service improvement.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

WORLD'S MOST POWERFUL SATELLITE OBSERVES SECOND BIRTHDAY TODAY

THIRD YEAR OF EXPERIMENTS PLANNED

OTTAWA, January 17, 1978---Members of the Canadian government-industry team that designed and built the world's most powerful communications satellite gather here today, to observe the landmark second anniversary of the spacecraft's launch. Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  said the success of the program confirms the value of new satellite technology in improving communications for all Canadians.

The experimental, Ottawa-built satellite, HERMES, is one of the most sophisticated satellites ever sent into space. Operating in a new frequency band with transmitted power levels up to 20 times those of conventional satellites, it has successfully demonstrated that such powerful new satellites can beam TV programs and other communications direct to small, portable earth stations, as little as 0.6 meter in antenna size.

Mme Sauv  said that, since Hermes had already met its design lifetime objective of two years, and is still operating well, plans for a "bonus" third year of experimental operations---through to the end of 1978---are being implemented.

HERMES was launched at 6.27 p.m., Jan. 17, 1976, from the Kennedy Space Centre in Florida, under a joint Canada-U.S. program, in which Canada had



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

(more)



designed and built the spacecraft and the United States had provided its experimental, high-power transmitting tube and carried out the launch. Both countries share in use of the satellite for experiments in fields as diverse as teleconferencing, community interaction, broadcasting, telemedicine, tele-education, government operations, computer/communications and communications and spacecraft technology.

In Canada, a total of 21 of 26 originally-planned experiments have now been completed, with others in progress or yet to begin. Twenty-one new proposals for using HERMES during its 1978 bonus year of operations are before an independent evaluation committee of three Fellows of the Royal Society of Canada, chaired by Dr. H.E. Duckworth, president of the University of Winnipeg, (and former president of the society), which will soon make its final recommendations to the department. The original coast-to-coast group of Canadian HERMES experimenters included universities, provincial governments and a native peoples' organization.

The communications minister said that the HERMES success "has brought closer the day when operational, commercial communications satellites, working with inexpensive, portable earth stations, can bring new and improved medical, educational, broadcasting and other services to Canadians in remote areas of the country." Already, the technology developed for the HERMES satellite is being exploited in Canada and the USA, in new series of satellites under construction in both countries, operating in the same frequency band as HERMES.

The challenge of putting together such a powerful and complex spacecraft, operating at frequencies three times higher than those which had previously been used on communications satellites, and with a host of new technology features and subsystems, involved many difficult engineering tradeoffs.

(more)

The chief limiting factor on back-up systems, redundant spare electronics and other measures that might have made the designers' job easier, was the strict weight limitation imposed by the capabilities of the available launch vehicle---NASA's Delta 2914 rocket.

In fact, the task of building such a satellite, to work reliably for even two years, has been compared to the difficulty of building a color television set that would operate 24 hours a day for 1,000 years, without need of a service call.

HERMES, in orbit 22,300 miles above the equator, off the west coast of south America, was declared a "mission success" by NASA Aug. 3, 1976, and by Canada on Oct. 21 of the same year.

Its major technological objectives--all of them met--related to three advanced technology subsystems: A lightweight, flexible power array (two large solar "sails" that unfurled from the sides of the spacecraft body, after it achieved geostationary orbit) which tracks the sun and provides operating power; a three-axis stabilization system (the first in a communications satellite with flexible appendages. Most satellites are still "spin stabilized.") and a NASA-supplied 200-watt travelling wave tube amplifier.

The next phase in federal government plans to foster introduction of new social applications of advanced technology satellites will be the ANIK-B satellite program. Using communications capacity leased from Telesat Canada, and the Telesat spacecraft ANIK-B, which is due for launch late this year, a series of carefully-selected "pilot projects" will be undertaken.

They will be limited in number and will last longer than the comparatively short and more diversified HERMES experiments. ANIK-B will thus help bridge the gap between the experimental demonstration of new applications by HERMES

(more)

and their introduction as commercial service offerings. The new ANIK-C series of satellites, which TELESAT CANADA is starting to build, will exploit HERMES technology and develop new services for Canadians.

The role of the department of communications in the process is to act as a catalyst, making available satellite time and terminals, so potential users can learn how to use satellites to solve their problems.

Ref: J.M. Bryan

613 (995-8185)



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## FEDERAL GOVERNMENT RE-INTRODUCES COMMUNICATIONS LEGISLATION

OTTAWA, January 26, 1978 -- The federal government today re-introduced communications legislation aimed at streamlining federal regulation of communications to make it more responsive to technological change and to provincial concerns.

The legislation, to be known as the Telecommunications Act, is virtually identical to Bill C-43 which was given first reading March 22, 1977. Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé said that although a number of changes have been made since, principally in response to representations from provincial ministers, industry officials and others, these amendments do not alter the nature and intent of the legislation.

The new legislation will clarify and consolidate existing federal legislation. It will replace four existing statutes and parts of two others by a single body of national telecommunications law.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Mme Sauvé said that, since the introduction of Bill C-43 last year, the new legislation has been publicly discussed and debated in some detail by provincial ministers and by other interested persons. "I am more convinced than ever that the legislation is necessary," she said. "First, it will provide the means to more effectively harmonize federal and provincial planning and regulation, and provincial ministers appear to support this. Second, it will provide for more effective regulation of federally regulated telecommunication carriers by the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

The Act will establish a clear demarcation between the functions and responsibilities of the Government and the CRTC. It also contains provisions by which policy and delegation agreements with provincial governments can be implemented.

The Telecommunications Act is the second phase of a two-step legislative process. Phase I, which came into force on April 1, 1976, amalgamated the former Canadian Radio-Television Commission and the Telecommunications Committee of the Canadian Transport Commission into a single regulatory body, the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

Under the Telecommunications Act, the CRTC will continue to regulate and supervise the activities of all broadcasting undertakings in Canada, as well as those telecommunication common carriers which are subject to federal regulation.

Madame Sauvé has emphasized that three features of the legislation are particularly important.

(more)

First, the bill opens with a clear statement of national telecommunications policy. The policy, developed in consultation with provincial governments, will serve as a basis for decisions taken by the CRTC, the Governor in Council and the Ministers. The policy consists of 16 objectives covering all aspects of telecommunications, including systems and services, broadcasting, radiocommunications and research. The first statement reads: "efficient telecommunications systems are essential to the sovereignty and integrity of Canada, and telecommunication services and production resources should be developed and administered so as to safeguard, enrich and strengthen the cultural, political, social and economic fabric of Canada".

Second, the Act will allow the Minister of Communications, with the consent of the Governor in Council, to enter into agreements with the provinces and gives the Governor in Council the power to authorize the sharing of certain federal regulatory functions with provincial agencies. Madame Sauvé said that the significance of this feature is that it now provides a mechanism for harmonizing federal and provincial communications objectives.

Third, the bill empowers the Governor in Council to issue broad policy directions to the CRTC with respect to the national telecommunications policy. Madame Sauvé emphasized that the Act does not, however, authorize the Governor in Council to issue directions to the CRTC with respect to the issue, amendment or renewal of particular broadcasting licences, the content of broadcast programming, the application of standards of quality to broadcasting programming or the restriction of freedom of expression.

The provisions of the existing Broadcasting Act relating to the role and status of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation are essentially unchanged in the new legislation.

The Telecommunications Act will replace the Broadcasting Act, Telegraphs Act, the CRTC Act, the Radio Act and those provisions of the Railway Act and the National Transportation Act which apply to telecommunications.

The department will make available on request a summary of changes in the legislation made since the introduction of Bill C-43.

A summary of the Telecommunications Act is attached.

Copies of the legislation are available from The Canadian Government Printing Bureau.

Reference: John S. Davidson

(613) 995-8079



## TELECOMMUNICATIONS ACT -- A SUMMARY

Phase II telecommunications legislation, to be known as the Telecommunications Act, will consolidate and clarify existing federal legislation so as to establish a single coherent embodiment of national telecommunications law.

The proposed Telecommunications Act will replace in toto the existing Broadcasting Act, CRTC Act, Radio Act, and Telegraphs Act, as well as those provisions of the Railway Act, and National Transportation Act which apply to telecommunications.

The bill is essentially the same as Bill C-43 of the last session. The changes which have been made between sessions, mainly at the suggestion of the provinces, major telecommunication carriers, the Canadian Association of Broadcasters, and the CRTC, are virtually all in the nature of clarification and correction.

Part I of the bill (SS.2-14), is particularly important in that it enunciates a national telecommunications policy on which must be based all discretionary decisions taken by the regulatory body, the Governor in Council or Ministers (S.3). This statement of national telecommunications policy was developed in consultation with the provincial governments. This general Part also contains a description of the respective areas of responsibility of the Minister of Communications and of the Secretary of State of Canada (S.6 and S.8). In addition, it empowers the Governor in Council to authorize the sharing of federal regulatory functions or responsibilities with provincial agencies pursuant to federal/provincial agreements negotiated by the Minister of Communications (S.7), to issue broad policy directions to the CRTC (S.9), and to set aside, vary or refer back specific decisions of the Commission (S.11).

Part II (SS.15-31) of the proposed legislation provides for the continuation of the enlarged single federal telecommunications regulatory body which came into existence when the Phase I telecommunications legislation was proclaimed in force on April 1, 1976. Under the Phase II legislation, the CRTC will continue to regulate and supervise the activities of all broadcasting undertakings in Canada, as well as those telecommunication common carriers which are subject to federal regulation (B.C. Telephone, Bell Canada, CN Telecommunications, Telesat, and Teleglobe). This Part also contains the important section (S.27) pertaining to the conduct of public hearings by the Commission, and includes a new permissive clause under which provision could be made for participation in one of the Commission's public hearings by a member of a provincial regulatory body (S.27(5)).

Part III (SS.32-40) outlines the regulatory powers of the CRTC with regard to broadcasting transmitting and broadcasting receiving undertakings (CATV). These regulatory powers are essentially unchanged from those which now exist under the Broadcasting Act.

Part IV (SS.40-55) defines the role and status of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation. Only minor technical amendments have been made to the counterpart provisions in the Broadcasting Act. Similarly the policy objectives in S.3 which are specifically applicable to the CBC (S.3)(k) and (l)) are the same as those in S.3 of the Broadcasting Act.

Part V (SS.55-62) will give the CRTC much more flexible and precise powers of regulation over the federally regulated telecommunication carriers than currently exist under the somewhat outdated provisions of the Telegraphs Act and the Railway Act. Explicit powers of the regulatory body to order such things as extension of service, terminal and systems interconnection, and pole attachment, may be found in S.55. The power in S.56 relating to new entry and major extensions is new: it is intended in part to deal with the issue of intercarrier competition which is of considerable interest to provincial governments. Similarly S.59, relating to acquisitions, disposals and incorporations, by federally regulated telecommunication carriers, of businesses involved in telecommunications, is a new power: a counterpart provision exists in the National Transportation Act but it applies only to transportation companies.

Part VI (SS.63-68) contains an updated version of the Radio Act and those parts of the Telegraphs Act which relate to submarine cables. One new provision in this part provides for the delegation by the Minister of Communications to designated department officials, of the power to suspend radio station licences for a period of 30 days.

Part VII (SS.69-77) contains the enforcement provisions and is based upon the comparable provisions of the various statutes which are being replaced.

Part VIII (SS.78-85) is self-explanatory: it contains the necessary transitional provisions providing for the continued existence of the CBC, CRTC, and their respective rules, regulations and by-laws.

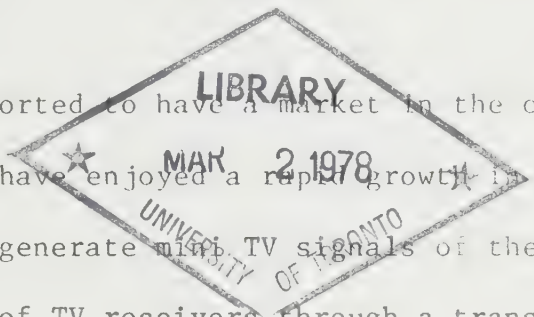
January, 1978

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## TECHNICAL STANDARDS FOR TV GAMES COMING

OTTAWA, February 22, 1978 -- The federal department of communications today announced it is moving to set technical standards for home TV games.

The devices, reported to have a market in the order of 500,000 units a year in Canada alone, have enjoyed a rapid growth in popularity during the past two years. They generate their own TV signals of their own, which are fed to the antenna terminals of TV receivers through a transfer switch that allows the TV game player to select either regular TV programming from his antenna or cable system, or the game.



The problem is that improper design or connection of these switches, and other characteristics of some models, can cause interference to other TV sets or radio services in the vicinity of the game.

Game signals can leak into cable systems or home receiving antennas, be carried on power lines or be radiated from the games themselves.

.../2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The government standards will set:

- . limits for normal output signal levels from games
- . isolation requirements for transfer switches
- . maximum permissible radiated signal strength from the devices themselves, and
- . maximum radio voltages to be allowed on game power cords.

These standards will be made under the Radio Act.

As an interim measure, until standards can be given the force of law, the department has published a circular setting out recommended standards and urging suppliers to submit units for establishment of their acceptability prior to the regulations going into force.

Reference:

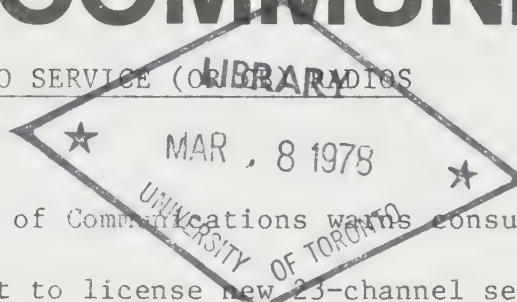
John Davidson

(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

NOTICE TO BUYERS OF GENERAL RADIO SERVICE (OR CB) RADIOS



OTTAWA, February 27, 1978 -- The Department of Communications warns consumers that following a United States' decision not to license new 23-channel sets as of January 1, 1978, there is a possibility that some General Radio Service (or CB) equipment no longer licensable in the USA may find its way to the shelves of Canadian retailers. This equipment is not licensable in Canada either.

Consumers are advised to make sure before they buy a GRS (or CB) radio that it can be legally licensed.

To be licensable in Canada, GRS equipment must meet the following requirements:

- . Forty-channel sets must bear the Department's type approval number which is a 9-digit number appearing on a label affixed to the radio.
- . New 23-channel sets must bear the Department's type approval number and a two-part label indicating the serial number of the set, one part of which is attached to the set and the other part which must be affixed to the licence application form. The Department has supplied dealers with these labels where applicable.

.../2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



- . Renewal licences will continue to be issued for any GRS radio, 23 or 40 channels, which has been previously licensed in Canada.

Dealers are reminded of their obligation to their customers to ensure that the GRS radios they sell can be licensed in Canada.

It is illegal to operate a GRS set without a licence and a separate licence is required for each set. Licences at \$13.50 for a three-year period are available from any Department of Communications district office.





# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Mr. Jean T. Fournier

Senior Assistant Deputy Minister

OTTAWA, March 2, 1978 -- Mr. Jean T. Fournier has been appointed Senior Assistant Deputy Minister of the Department of Communications.

Mr. Fournier, 34, replaces Mr. André Lapointe who has left the Department to become Executive Vice-President (Corporate Affairs) of Teleglobe Canada. Mr. Fournier's appointment takes effect in mid-March.

His duties include overall responsibilities for six divisions;

- National Telecommunications which formulates policies and programs with respect to the national communications system;
- International Telecommunications which seeks to maintain and promote Canada's interests internationally;
- Social Policy and Programs which conducts studies and develops policies and programs with respect to social issues related to communications;
- Telecommunications Economics which provides advice, analyses and studies on the economic aspects of telecommunications;
- Federal-Provincial Relations which formulates policies and provides advice on federal-provincial matters; and
- Legal Services.

.../2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Mr. Fournier will also be the focal point in the Department for contacts with Teleglobe Canada and the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

Mr. Fournier has been Executive Director of the Office of Native Claims, Department of Indian and Northern Affairs since 1975. He was responsible for negotiating specific claims and related Native grievances with Native groups throughout the country and with provincial and territorial governments. He was also involved in the completion of the James Bay, Naskapi and Northern Manitoba claims agreements, whose totals approach some \$500 million, and other claims negotiations in Saskatchewan, British Columbia, the Yukon and the Northwest Territories, which have demanded extensive federal-provincial consultation and a comprehensive knowledge of the long-term economic and social implications of the settlements obtained.

Previously, Mr. Fournier served as Director of the Territorial and Social Development Branch, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development (1974-75). He joined DIAND after acting as research assistant with the Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism (1964-66); Special Assistant to the Honourable Jean Chretien when he was Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development (1968-1971); and Mr. Chretien's Executive Assistant from 1971-1973. He has also been a member of the Board of Directors of Canadian Arctic Producers and the Federation of Arctic Cooperatives.

Mr. Fournier was born in Quebec City and educated in France and Canada. He received a BA from Queen's University in 1964 and an MA degree in Economics from Laval University in 1968. He is married to the former Lyse Beaulieu and has two children.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## NEW DISTRICT OFFICE TO OPEN IN RIMOUSKI

RIMOUSKI, March 5, 1978 -- The federal Department of Communications will open a new district office in Rimouski, Quebec, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  today announced. The office will administer the Radio Act and manage the radio frequency spectrum in this part of Quebec. Services will include radio station licensing, inspection and investigation of radio interference.

The area to be served by the Rimouski office includes the Gasp  peninsula from the village of St. Alexandre to west of Rivi re-du-Loup.

Until now this area has been served by the Quebec district office but a considerable growth in the use of radio in this part of the province has made the new office necessary. Staff limitations and the distances to be travelled have made it difficult to respond adequately to complaints of interference to radio service. Within the Rimouski district, there are about 8,000 radio stations used for a wide range of communications purposes by police and fire departments, businesses, industries and private individuals.

The new office in Rimouski will be the eighth district office operated by the Department of Communications in the Quebec region and the forty-third in Canada.

- 30 -

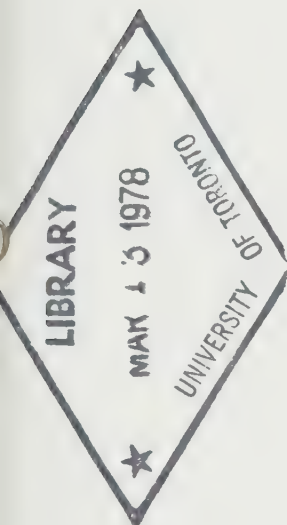


Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185





# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, March 14, 1978 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  today said a report on Pay TV, released yesterday by the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, will obviously be an important and useful step in the development of a Pay TV policy for Canada.

"Although I have not had a chance to study it in depth, I agree in general with its tone and its principles and I believe without a doubt that it represents a significant contribution to the formulation of government policy on Pay TV.

"Like the CRTC, I am in no hurry to push for the immediate introduction of Pay TV, but at the same time, it is important that this new medium not be allowed to develop in piecemeal fashion. For this reason, I consider it important that the government develop a coherent Pay TV policy as soon as practicable.

"As a result, I have already asked the Department of Communications to begin immediately an analysis of the report and its recommendations. I anticipate a report on this in a matter of weeks, at which time I expect to discuss the issue of Pay TV with my cabinet colleagues. In addition, the forthcoming federal-provincial conference of communications ministers offers the opportunity for an exchange of views with my provincial counterparts.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



"I expect that in the near future, I will be in a position to outline the course of action the government intends to take with respect to the further development of a Pay TV policy for the country.

"The CRTC has confirmed that, if carefully introduced and properly regulated, Pay TV could not only benefit the subscriber but contribute to the development of Canada's creative and production capabilities.

"I do not believe, however, that Pay TV should be introduced 'just because it is technically possible to do so'. My concern, as Minister of Communications, is to ensure that the development and use of new technology should be the subject of a conscious choice, based on our objectives for communications in Canada. One of these objectives, which will be of critical significance in the development of Pay TV, is to maintain and strengthen Canada's cultural integrity. "



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CANADA, QUEBEC JOINTLY FUND COMMUNICATIONS RESEARCH CONTRACT

OTTAWA, March 15, 1978 --- The federal and Quebec governments have signed an agreement to fund and jointly manage a communications research contract, federal Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  today announced.

The \$10,000 contract with L'Ecole Polytechnique de Montreal is to develop a detailed plan for research into new in-home communications services likely to require new types of domestic terminals. The University of Sherbrooke, various electronics companies and telecommunications carriers will participate in the work. The research plan is considered important, for a variety of new services delivered through communications systems are now technically possible.

Contract management will be by a four-man committee composed of two representatives of each level of government. There will also be a 50-50 sharing of the costs.

"This arrangement is a significant contribution to improved co-operation between my department and its provincial counterpart in Quebec," said Madame Sauv . "But it should also be seen in the context of our continuing efforts to improve the effectiveness of our overall research program through closer working relationships with both provincial governments and industries," she said.

A potential result of the study could be further work towards prototype development and field-testing of new communications terminals.

-30-



Gouvernement du Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185





# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CHARLOTTETOWN, March 29, 1978 -- Federal-provincial co-operation in the communications field has never been as evident as it is now, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  said at the end of a meeting of federal and provincial Communications Ministers here today.

"I regard the meeting as an historic one, since it reaffirms the positive and co-operative approach to the resolution of federal-provincial communications matters which began with the previous meeting last year in Edmonton", Mme. Sauv  said.

"Before 1976, federal-provincial relations in the communications field were contentious at best. I was pleased with the progress we made in Edmonton, but regretted the absence of the Quebec Minister of Communications at that meeting. This time, all provincial governments were represented and there was a considerable degree of consensus on most of the items under discussion."

The Minister said that the meeting was marked by an atmosphere of goodwill and co-operation on the part of all provincial Ministers. "Indeed, because we succeeded in reaching a consensus on so many of the items under discussion, we were able to finish a day earlier than planned."

 Government of Canada

Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada

Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



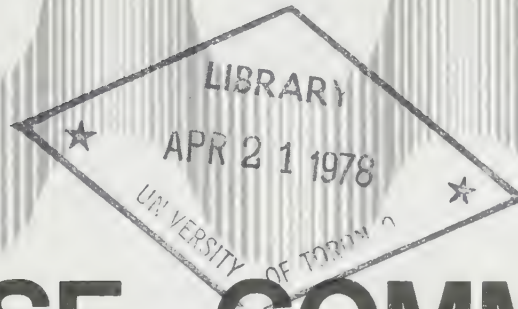
Mme. Sauvé expressed particular satisfaction that her provincial colleagues strongly supported the new federal communications legislation, introduced as Bill C-24 on January 26, 1978. "Not only did the provinces support the Bill", she said, "but they urged its passage by Parliament as soon as possible."

Discussions on the question of pay-television were extremely valuable, the Minister said, particularly in the light of the recently-published CRTC report. "There was a wide range of views expressed by provincial Ministers on the need for its introduction at this time, and provincial views will constitute an important contribution to the development of a pay-television policy for Canada."

The Minister said that the discussions on the delegation of federal authority over cable were also very productive. There was consensus on a number of issues related to delegation, including consensus that the protection of the Canadian broadcasting system should be an essential feature of any future delegation arrangements.

"The cable television delegation discussion was a general one", the Minister said, "which will be pursued in the months to come as I continue bilateral explorations with the various provincial Ministers." She pointed out, however, that the question remains an extremely complex one, which can ultimately be resolved only through highly detailed and complex negotiations.





Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CONTRACTS WORTH \$1.75 MILLION SIGNED WITH BELL CANADA AND CNT FOR IMPROVED TELEPHONE SERVICE TO NWT COMMUNITIES

OTTAWA, April 6, 1978 -- Memoranda of Understanding for the Northern Communications Assistance Program and related contracts have been signed with Bell Canada and with Canadian National Telecommunications (CNT) for provision of basic local and long-distance telephone service to communities in the Northwest Territories, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today. The contracts, worth more than \$1.75 million, cover the first five communities to be served under the program, which was announced in January 1977.

The \$931,000 contract with CNT covers telephone service to the communities of Sachs Harbour, Holman and Snowdrift. Further contracts are to be signed between the government and CNT for service by 1980 to Lac La Martre, Nahanni Butte, Jean-Marie River, Rae Lakes, Umingmaktok (Bay Chimo) and Colville Lake.

The \$822,000 contract with Bell Canada covers telephone service to Hall Beach and Whale Cove. Between now and 1980, further contracts between the government and Bell Canada will cover service to Repulse Bay, Grise Fiord, Clyde, Broughton Island and Lake Harbour.

The Northern Communications Assistance Program will provide about \$9 million in federal contributions over a five-year period to cover the capital cost of communications facilities between communities required to bring reliable long-distance telephone service to the Northwest Territories. Over the same period, Bell Canada and CNT, the two telecommunication companies providing service to the region, are investing



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada . . . 2  
Minist re des Communications

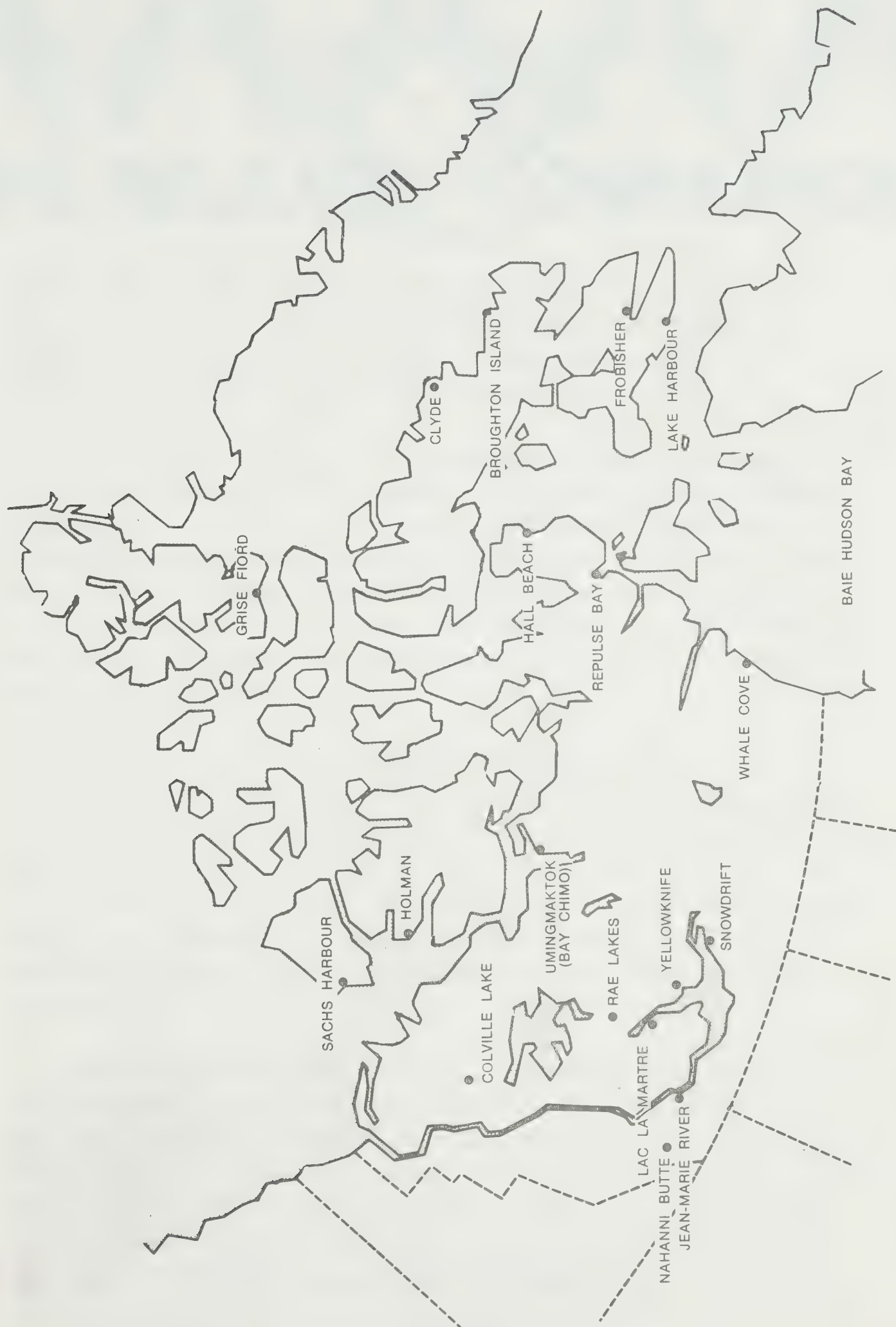
Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



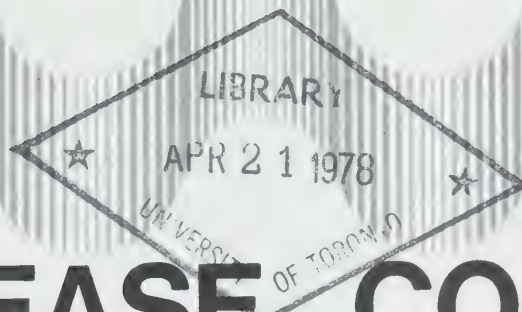
a similar amount in capital and operating funds for local exchange equipment and for operating the telephone circuits between communities. The long distance links are being provided either by satellite ground stations or ground-based circuits, whichever is the more economical means of serving a particular community.

Madame Sauvé said she was pleased that the Government of the Northwest Territories and the Inuit Tapirisat of Canada had participated in the development of implementation schedules in order that these may reflect better the needs and wishes of the people in the communities.









# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CRTC APPOINTMENTS

OTTAWA, April 7, 1978 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé today announced the appointments by Order-in-Council of two new commissioners and the renewal of terms of three others to the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

Paul H. Klinge, Q.C., has been appointed to a seven-year term as a full-time commissioner. Mr. Klinge, who graduated from the University of Alberta in Arts and Law, is a trustee of the Robert Teigler Trust, a charitable foundation, and president of the Teigler Foundation, as well as a trustee of the Sheckter Trust. Admitted to the Alberta Bar in 1953, he was a partner with the law firm of D.W. Cobbledick and J.F. Lumburn until 1966. Since then he has been with the law firm of Klinge, Cummings, Andrews and Wilton, Barristers.

Steve Patrick has been appointed to a five-year term as a part-time commissioner. Mr. Patrick, who attended Glenella Collegiate, the Manitoba Teachers College and the Success Commercial College, served as the Liberal member for Assiniboia in the Manitoba Legislature from 1962 to 1977. He played 13 years of professional football, all with the Winnipeg Blue Bombers, and has long been active in numerous community service projects. He is president of Patrick Realty Ltd. and Patrick Insurance Services Ltd. of Winnipeg.

Rosalie Alma Gower, first appointed to the CRTC in April 1973 as a part-time commissioner, has had her appointment renewed for another five years. Mrs. Gower graduated as a Registered Nurse from the Royal Jubilee Hospital in Victoria in 1955. A resident of Vernon, B.C., Mrs. Gower continues to practice part-time at the Vernon Jubilee Hospital. She served a one-year term as a Vernon alderman and has been chairman of the Vernon Recreation Commission.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

...2

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

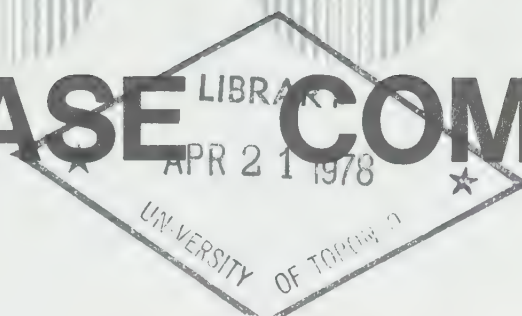


Harry Bower has had his appointment as a part-time commissioner renewed for another five years. He joined the Royal Bank of Canada in 1927 and retired as its assistant general manager. He has been active in a number of community associations in Saskatchewan for many years.

Brian Land has also had his appointment as a part-time commissioner renewed for another five years. A graduate of the University of Toronto (he has a B.A., B.L.S., M.A. and M.L.S.), Mr. Land was an associate editor of Canadian Business magazine in 1958-59. He was the Dean of the Faculty of Library Science at the University of Toronto and has been a professor of library science since 1964. He is the author of many articles and research papers.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE



## NEW RADIO BANDS AND TECHNICAL STANDARDS

## PROPOSED FOR SECURITY AND CONTROL DEVICES

OTTAWA , April 10, 1978 --- The federal department of communications (DOC) today announced proposals to meet growing consumer demand for low-power remote control radio devices for alarm, control and other applications.

The department is proposing creation of three new frequency bands, between 300 and 400 Megahertz (MHz), in which such devices would be permitted to operate without radio licences, after meeting new technical standards.

Devices such as automatic garage door-openers, fire and burglary alarms and controls for the movement of gates now operate in the industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) bands, of which the most popular has been at 27 MHz. But interference resulting from the explosive growth of 27 MHz General Radio Service (CB radio) and growing markets for alarms and similar security devices make creation of new bands necessary.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The department is proposing allocation of 310 to 320, 350 - 360 and 380 - 400 MHz to meet this demand. Each piece of equipment sold for both these and existing remote control bands would have to carry a radio licence exemption number, which would be issued to its manufacturer or distributor after acceptance by the department of the model concerned.

DOC's circular TRC-51 -- "Information Relating to a Proposed Standard for Exemption from Licensing of Low Power Devices for Control and Security Applications" --- provides full details. Copies may be obtained from regional offices of the department in Moncton, Montreal, Toronto, Winnipeg and Vancouver, or from:

Information Branch,  
Department of Communications  
300 Slater Street, Tel: (613) 995-8185  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0C8

Comments on the proposed standards are invited. They should be mailed, not later than May 21, 1978, to:

Mr. W.W. Scott,  
Regulations Development Branch,  
Telecommunications Regulatory Service,  
Department of Communications,  
300 Slater Street,  
Ottawa, Ontario.  
K1A 0C8

(more)

The department will accept equipment for testing and interim approval now, pending finalization of the standard.

Reference:

J M. Bryan

613 (995-8185)

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CANADA PARTICIPATES IN AN IMPORTANT INTERNATIONAL SYMPOSIUM ON SATELLITE TELECOMMUNICATIONS IN PERU

OTTAWA, May 15, 1978 -- Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  today announced Canada's participation in an important international symposium on satellite communications opening today and running until May 18 in Lima, Peru.

At the symposium, government and industry will discuss Canadian competence and expertise in satellite communications, which have a world-wide market potential estimated at several billion dollars over the next few years.

Some South American countries now have domestic satellite systems through the use of Intelsat. As these systems develop, it is expected that they will acquire fully national systems over the next 10-15 years. Some of the countries have similar problems as Canada such as terrain and population distribution. The experience acquired by the government and by some 40 Canadian businesses in the areas of research and development, advisory services, manufacture of materials, and the efficient use of our own communications network could provide useful support for setting up the South American systems.

This meeting, under the auspices of ASETA\* (association of state telecommunications companies of the Andean Pact countries), ENTEL\* (the Peruvian telecommunications company) and INECTEL\* (the Peruvian institute for telecommunications research and training), brings together delegates from all of the South American countries as well as the telecommunications industry and governments from Europe, the United States, Japan and Canada.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada . . . 2  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



At the symposium, Canadian delegates are demonstrating Canada's competence in the area of satellite communications. Presentations deal with the efficient management of our national satellite communications system under the following headings: telecommunications to remote areas; successful experiments with Hermes, Canada's experimental communications satellite, and the projects envisaged for Anik B to be launched by Telesat Canada later this year; Canadian experience in remote sensing; the possible transfer of our technology for the benefit of South American countries where there is mutual interest; our competence as consultants; the possibility of aid for training programs; and finally the construction of small earth stations. Highlight of the Canadian participation will be a live transmission of a message from Mrs. Sauvé to the participants in the symposium via the Hermes satellite on May 16. The symposium will also provide the opportunity for close relations with South American countries, with an eye to the 1982 regional administrative conference on radiocommunications for satellite broadcasting, in which certain Canadian interests will be involved.

Mr. L.A. Bustos, director of International Development in the Department of Communications, will be the chairman of the Canadian presentation. The departments of Communications and Industry, Trade and Commerce were responsible for co-ordinating Canada's participation. Other government departments and agencies also co-operated in preparing for the Canadian presentation.

Information: Mr. R.G. McCullagh  
International Arrangements Branch  
593-7445

\*Meaning of initials used:

ASETA: Asociación de Empresas estatales de Telecomunicaciones  
de los Países del Pacto Andino  
ENTEL: Empresa Nacional de Telecomunicaciones  
INECTEL: Instituto Nacional de Investigación y Capacitación  
de Telecomunicaciones

**\*\*List of Canadian delegates:**

**For the government:**

Mr. L.A. Bustos, Director, International Development  
Department of Communications  
Chairman of the Canadian presentations.

Mr. W.F. Potter, Electrical and Electronics Branch  
(Telecommunications Division)  
Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce.

Mr. N.G. Davies, Director, Space Communications Program  
Office, Department of Communications.

Mr. A.R. Molozzi, Director, Space Application and Industrial  
Programs, Department of Communications.

Mr. B. Clark, Senior Technician, Communications Research  
Centre, Department of Communications.

**For industry:**

Mr. J. MacDonald, President, MacDonald-Dettwiler Associates.

Mr. J. Baby, Vice-President, Planning and Administration,  
Telesat Canada.

Mr. M.A. Scott, Vice-President, Canadian Astronautics Ltd.

Mr. J. Boulakia, Marketing Director, SED Systems Ltd.

Mr. J. Collins, Spar Technology Ltd.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Radio and local programming reports released

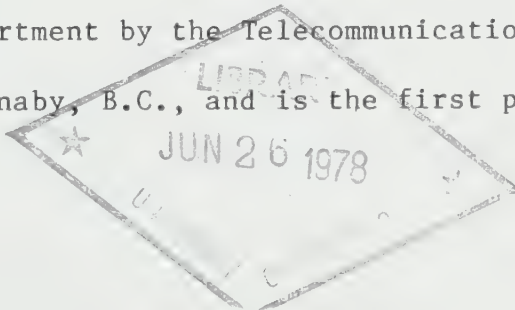
OTTAWA, June 6, 1978 -- The Department of Communications has released two reports dealing with local programming and a financial analysis of private radio broadcasting.

One study entitled A Financial Analysis of the Private Radio Broadcasting Sector in Canada and the United States was prepared for the department by Abt Associates Research of Canada Ltd., Ottawa.

The purpose of the study was to provide an independent and current analysis of the private radio broadcasting industry in Canada and the United States and of the effects the different regulatory environments have had on the industry.

The other report is entitled A Study of the Emergence of New Forms of Local Programming within the Canadian Broadcasting System.

It was prepared for the department by the Telecommunications Research Group at Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, B.C., and is the first part of a two-part research project.



...more



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The project is to determine why new local programming activities have developed in some localities and not in others, and thus pinpoint the factors essential to the development of new local programming.

The reports are available from Information Services, Department of Communications, 300 Slater St., Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0C8.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## ONE PHONE NUMBER FOR INFORMATION ON BOTH FEDERAL AND MANITOBA GOVERNMENT PROGRAMS

WINNIPEG, June 16, 1978 -- Simply by dialling one phone number, Manitoba residents will now be able to obtain information about both federal government and Manitoba government programs.

The expanded inquiry service has been made possible through an agreement signed by federal Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  and Manitoba Minister of Consumer, Corporate and Internal Services Ed McGill.

Manitoba's Citizens' Inquiry Service (CIS) -- an existing provincial telephone information agency -- already receives about a thousand calls a month regarding federal programs.

Under the agreement, CIS staff will be authorized to respond to requests for information on behalf of various federal departments or, if need be, to contact the federal officials concerned to obtain the relevant information. The CIS has prepared a complete list of all federal government departments, agencies and Crown corporations located in Manitoba, as well as a list of all Members of Parliament and Senators from Manitoba. Manitoba's Citizens' Inquiry Service will provide the public with the telephone number, location and name of the person to contact to obtain more information on federal programs, if required.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The service is available everywhere in Manitoba, through MCIS's province-wide inquiry system, each working day between 8:00 am and 5:30 pm.

Mme Sauv  said the agreement was important, because many Canadians are unsure of the level of government responsible for a particular service. "Providing one telephone number for information on both Manitoba and federal government programs will contribute significantly to the goal of providing better service to the public and will add to citizens' appreciation that we live in one country where federalism can work."

The agreement, which takes effect immediately, will last for one year on an experimental basis, at a cost to the federal government of \$35,000. Following evaluation, the agreement may be renewed annually.

Mr. McGill said the existing Citizens' Inquiry Service handles in all about 3,500 calls per month. In preparation for the expanded program, a summer student was hired to help collate additional material on federal government operations and programs and prepare a broadened information-retrieval system. Apart from this temporary addition, the existing CIS establishment will handle the new duties, he said.

The present phone numbers will continue to be used -- 957-8920 for Winnipeggers and the toll-free 1-800-292-8920 for those in Manitoba phoning long-distance.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## FEDERAL GOVERNMENT TO TEST NEW FIBRE OPTICS COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM IN RURAL MANITOBA

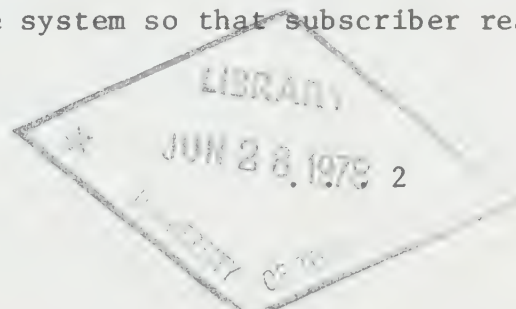
OTTAWA, June 19, 1978 -- As part of its efforts to improve communications in rural Canada and to stimulate industrial activity the Federal Government will conduct a field trial of fibre optics technology in the small town of Elie, Manitoba, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  today announced.

Fibre optics technology is a promising new means of transmitting telephone, TV, radio and other services using light waves conducted through ultra-thin fibres.

The program, proposed by the Manitoba Telephone System and supported by the Departments of Communications and of Industry, Trade & Commerce, is aimed at testing this new technology under actual environmental and market conditions. Mme Sauv  said the program will help the development of a fully Canadian industrial capability in this promising field, and determine whether this particular technology is suitable, technically and economically, for improving telecommunications services in rural areas of the country.

The trial will deliver, through a fibre optics transmission system, single-party-line telephone service, at least five and possibly more TV channels, FM radio and some two-way computer interactive signals to allow for experiments in new services such as teleshopping or information retrieval.

The private sector and federal and provincial agencies will be invited to provide experimental services through the system so that subscriber reaction as well as the technology can be tested.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



At least a quarter of the Canadian population lives in rural or non-urban areas and Mme Sauvé said it is no secret that, compared with the private-line telephone service and wide choice of FM and TV which are taken for granted in most Canadian cities, "the rural population considers itself severely disadvantaged."

In 1976, the federal Department of Communications instituted a rural communications program to determine whether new technology could be used to reduce costs and overcome much of the current economic barrier in the provision of rural telecommunications services. In addition to programs in fibre optics, developments such as satellites and new breakthroughs in electronic technology (e.g. Large Scale Integrated (L.S.I.) circuits) are being studied and developed for this purpose. Also under study are ways to get more mileage out of existing systems so that through better use of facilities, the costs of upgrading service per subscriber can be kept as low as possible.

Mme Sauvé said that it is vital for Canadian industry to develop quickly experience and capability in the fibre optics field, since the industrial potential is astronomical. A 33 per cent average growth rate per year in world-wide optical fibre consumption has been predicted into the 1990's. In North America alone, the value of fibre optics investment is projected to reach by 1990, more than a billion dollars a year.

"By supporting a Canadian field trial, the Government will be providing Canadian industry with the practical experience it needs to develop a solid internationally competitive position in this new and rapidly-expanding market," Mme Sauvé said. "The implications for Canadian industry and high-technology jobs are enormous" she said.

To plan the details of the Manitoba trial, the Department of Communications in conjunction with the Canadian Telecommunications Carriers Association (\$100,000 from DOC, \$100,000 from industry) has undertaken a program definition study with Bell Northern Research and Canadian Wire and Cable Ltd.

The Manitoba Telephone System has agreed to supply the basic infrastructure for the trial including housing, poles, switches and personnel for operating and maintaining the system. The federal government's funding of the trial has been made possible as a result of the program to encourage and strengthen research and development in high technology areas, announced recently by Minister of State for Science and Technology Judd Buchanan.

A fibre six thousandths of an inch in diameter can provide 50,000 to 500,000 one-way voice circuits. And the basic cost of fibres, once production techniques are fully ironed out and mass production becomes a reality, is expected to be extremely low. This high capacity coupled with low cost constitutes the major potential of fibre optics technology.

Fibre optics is a relative newcomer on the scene. The Communications Research Centre of the Department of Communications, beginning about five years ago, has spear-headed Canadian research in this revolutionary new technology and various other fibre optics programs are underway in Canada. The Federal Government is working closely, not only with the manufacturing industry, but also with the cable television industry and the telephone carriers, to bring the benefits of fibre optics to all Canadians.

Reference: John S. Davidson  
995-8079

# FACT SHEET DOCUMENTATION

## The New Technology of Fibre Optics

Light was first used for communications by transmitting through the atmosphere between two points. However, the vagaries of transmission through the atmosphere limit this application to short distances and specific situations. Transmission of light through hollow pipes, or waveguides, has also been successfully achieved but is impractical because of stringent rigidity, uniformity and freedom from vibration requirements. Serious research on transmission through glass started back in the 1950s but due to the high attenuation exhibited by the types of glass available, and problems with very inefficient devices for inserting and retrieving light signals at either end, applications were few and very specialized. Fortunately, researchers remained undaunted and recent years have witnessed an increasing rate of success at overcoming obstacles and developing effective solutions.

Glass fibres used for communications are hair thin, solid, flexible filaments which can carry light beams from end to end, around bends and corners, without interruption. Ordinary glass absorbs light to a relatively high degree, limiting its use to a matter of feet. The first major breakthrough in the development of highly transparent glass

.../2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



occurred in the early 1970s. The entire process of eliminating impurities and drawing the glass must yield a fibre which is not only uniform, unbroken, and very transparent, but with a refraction index which is different at the centre than it is at the periphery so that the bulk of the light transmitted will travel along the centre core of the fibre while the outer regions or cladding, being of a lower refraction index, will nudge any would-be strays back into the core.

While the production of low-loss high-quality fibre can be considered a crucial milestone, there remains to be solved the problems concerned with protecting the fibre from the elements and the rigors of real operating conditions. Surprisingly, these fibres, while made of glass, are highly susceptible to moisture; moreover, while very strong in tension, they resist torsion very poorly. Techniques for producing cables which will provide single or multiple fibres with the necessary environmental and physical protection have been developed and continue to evolve.

The simplest optical fibre communications system consists, first of all, of a source of electrical signals -- telephony, TV, data, etc -- which must be adapted to the transmission medium. In the case of fibre optics, these electrical signals are converted into corresponding beams of light by low-power lasers or light-emitting diodes. Having travelled down the fibre, the light is received by a photo-sensitive detector which converts its impulses back into electrical signals, which are then processed and delivered in the usual way. If the transmission distance

is very long, the light beams will have to be intercepted at intervals along the path and reinforced through the use of repeaters, which is also of course standard practice in the telephone and cable-television industry. However, the lower attenuation of optical fibres usually means far fewer repeaters are required than are needed in a cable system.

The abruptly quickening pace of interest, expenditure and effort in fibre optics communications that has occurred in nearly every developed country during the last two years has been triggered by a sudden realization of the potential cost savings of the new technique. Optical fibre links appear to be a very cost-effective alternative to microwave, coaxial cable and paired cable in many applications.

The advantages of fibre optics over other modes of communications can be listed as follows:

- a) cost: it is estimated that as demand and production rates increase, fibre optics will most certainly undercut coaxial cable systems of equal capacity and may even become as low as the cost of copper pairs used for telephony. Moreover, the basic material is silica, an essentially unlimited and widespread resource.
- b) transmission capacity: the potential transmission capacity of fibre optic systems equals and possibly surpasses that of coaxial cable systems; new devices and techniques are being rapidly developed which will translate this potential into actual practice. Moreover, due to their small size, capacity can be drastically increased simply by adding more fibres.

- c) size and weight: because of their relatively small size, fibres can be used where space is at a premium. Already, some telephone companies are installing them in overcrowded ducts, thereby avoiding the costly installation of additional cable ducts beneath city streets. Also of interest is its potential use in aircraft.
- d) security: by their very nature, fibres are relatively immune to both jamming and eavesdropping.
- e) immunity to interference: due to the non-electrical character of its mode of operation, fibre optic systems are relatively immune to interference from lightning, power-lines, or other communications systems. For this reason, some systems are already in use by the military and by hydro companies for control purposes.
- f) safety: for the same reason, fibre optic systems do not exhibit any shock hazard and, therefore, are highly suitable for use in explosive atmospheres.

The Communications Research Centre of the Department of Communications is now working towards overcoming some of the practical problems that must be tackled before optical systems are realized. Work is directed towards a broad assessment of optical communications technology and relating it to the potential requirements of communications systems.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

DOC approves 14 pilot projects for Anik B

and another 14 experiments for Hermes

OTTAWA, June 19, 1978 -- The Department of Communications has accepted 14 proposals for pilot projects on the Anik B satellite to be launched in December 1978 and another 14 experiments for the Hermes satellite, now in its third year of operation, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today. Seven of the Anik B projects will be developed in co-operation with other federal and provincial ministries to study the viability of new social telecommunications services.

The department is leasing up to four channels on the new Anik B satellite from Telesat Canada for two years starting in early 1979, with an option for a subsequent three years. The satellite channels have been leased at a cost of up to \$34 million to provide satellite capacity for public service and other pilot projects. Lease charges include satellite launch and operating costs attributable to the government program.

Providing earth stations and detailed planning for the pilot projects will cost the department an additional \$4 million. About 20 modified Canadian ground stations from the Canada - U.S. Hermes satellite program will be available for the public service projects.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

.../2

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Mme Sauvé said the projects are building on the experience gained from a wide range of social and technical experiments conducted with the high-powered Hermes satellite. Although Hermes had a planned mission lifetime of two years, it is still working well, and a bonus third year of experiments and demonstrations has recently been approved by the minister.

For this third year, 14 new Hermes experiments were selected by an independent evaluation committee, the chairman of which is Dr. Henry Duckworth, president of the University of Winnipeg. Detailed planning and scheduling of experiments are already in progress. The first experiment has already been completed.

The seven social service Anik B pilot projects will explore the application of satellite technology for telehealth, tele-education, community communications and television distribution. Seven other projects will explore technical applications in remote sensing, data communications and propagation measurements among other fields.

Anik B, a hybrid satellite, will be able to operate in the 6 and 4 gigahertz (GHz) frequency bands to carry commercial traffic like the three Aniks now in service. It will also be able to operate in the 14 and 12 GHz frequency bands, like Hermes, for experimental applications.

Mme Sauvé said the aim of the Anik B program is to advance national objectives in telecommunications and broadcasting. "It is essential to recognize that a communications satellite has a national dimension, which can contribute to strengthening the national identity, Canadian culture and national unity.

"In this regard, we are also discussing with the Speaker of the House of Commons the place of satellites in the carriage of the proceedings of the House for television distribution."

The DOC Anik B program will examine the viability of new telecommunications services, further explore the potential of 14/12 GHz satellite technology and make users aware of that potential for delivery of new services.

The Department of Communications received 35 Anik B project proposals from 29 different groups and evaluated the proposals in terms of user requirements, technical feasibility and suitability, operational and policy considerations, the capability of the proposers to carry out the projects, adequacy of funding, the degree of innovation in the proposals and the probability that the pilot projects would foster transition to new or improved operational services.

The Anik B program is expected to produce sufficient data to allow users to decide whether or not satellite systems are a desirable means of providing new services on a long-term basis. In the post Anik B phase, satellite services will be sought by the users from the carriers.

"The role of the Department of Communications is that of a catalyst," said Mme Sauv  , "and as such we will do our best to see that demands and expectations created in the Anik B program can be carried out in an operational system.

"The Anik B program will test a market that may be developing in the public services sector and we hope the carriers will investigate the kinds of options open for future systems developments."

The following projects are being developed for the social telecommunications services component of the Anik B program.

1. Telehealth - Memorial University of Newfoundland

The university plans to deliver, via an interactive satellite communications system, educational health programs for health professionals and to develop health programs in seven remote communities in Labrador and Newfoundland.

Contact: Ms J. Roberts (709) 737-6654

2. Multi-purpose - Ministry of Communications of Québec

With the assistance of the provincial Ministry of Communications, several Quebec agencies and universities plan to deliver health care, education and other government services to native and non-native peoples in Quebec. The following institutions are currently involved with the Ministry of Communications: Ministère de l'Education Québec, Université de Montréal, Université du Québec, Université Laval, McGill University and Taqramiut Nipingat Inc.

Contact: Mr. Louis Leclerc (418) 643-1903

3. Multi-purpose - Ontario Ministry of Government Services

The Ministry of Government Services plans to evaluate a satellite-based network for the information transfer requirements of several provincial ministries related to voice, facsimile, teletype and video transmission.

Contact: Mr. D.I. Towers (416) 965-0175

4. Tele-education - Ontario Educational Communications Authority (OECA)

OECA plans to extend its video network via satellite to improve delivery of educational programming to remote communities in the provinces.

Contact: Mr. P. Bowers (416) 484-2621

5. Community Communications - Alberta Educational Communications Authority (AECA)

AECA and other Alberta participants will connect a program centre in Edmonton with several northern communities in the province using one-way video and two-way audio links for educational and community services aimed at both the native and non-native population.

Contact: Richard Morton (403) 427-4920

6. Tele-education - British Columbia Ministry of Education

The Distance Education Planning Group (DEPG) of the Ministry of Education is co-ordinating participation of about 25 institutions in a proposal to implement an interactive satellite communications system to improve access to academic, vocational/technical, adult education and community/continuing education programs.

Contact: John Bottomley (604) 872-0245

.../7

7. Community Communications - Inuit Tapirisat of Canada (ITC)

The Inuit Tapirisat of Canada proposes to implement an interactive satellite communications system to improve access to educational instruction to permit teleconferencing of meetings and to test the viability of an Inuit television broadcasting service.

Contact: Ms. Lindsay Green (613) 238-8181

The following projects are being developed for the technology component of the Anik B program.

1. Data communications - Telesat Canada and the TransCanada Telephone System (TCTS)

The objective of this proposal is to evaluate a terrestrial-satellite digital link for the Anik C system.

Contact: Mr. R.M. Lester (Telesat Canada) (613) 746-5920

Mr. D.A. Smith (TCTS) (613) 239-4611

2. Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) - Department of Communications

The department plans to test the operational features of a medium capacity TDMA satellite communications system.

Contact: Dr. P. Nuspl (613) 596-9441

3. Radio-interferometry - University of Toronto, York University, Energy, Mines and Resources, National Research Council and the U.S. Naval Research Laboratory

This proposal relates to the establishment of an operational long baseline interferometer for geophysical studies.

Contact: Dr. Y.L. Yen (416) 978-8756

4. Remote sensing - Canada Centre for Remote Sensing (CCRS)

The CCRS plans to deliver remote sensing imagery analysis capability, now based in Ottawa, to distant users in Newfoundland, Quebec and Alberta.

Contact: Mr. T. Butlin (613) 993-0121

5. Propagation - Teleglobe Canada

Teleglobe proposes to conduct a propagation study to assess the influence of local weather conditions on traffic switching arrangements in an earth station system, particularly as it relates to Intelsat V service to be offered by Teleglobe Canada in the future.

Contact: Mr. T. Welt (514) 281-7981

6. Propagation - McGill University

McGill plans to do a propagation study to compare the attenuation observed on a satellite link during rain with the attenuation calculated from radar observations conducted at the McGill Radar Weather Observatory in St. Anne de Bellevue, Quebec.

Contact: J. Stewart Marshall (514) 457-3219

7. Propagation - Telesat Canada

Telesat Canada proposes to integrate a prototype adaptive polarization tracking system in one of its experimental earth stations to field test it for compensation of uplink depolarization during rain storms.

Contact: Mr. R.M. Lester (613) 746-5920

The following experiments have been approved as part of the bonus third  
year in the Hermes program

1. Teleconferencing - Ontario Government

For four months starting in May 1978, the Telecommunication Services Branch of the Ontario Government plans to use a teleconferencing network incorporating a TV transmit/receive terminal in Thunder Bay and a TV receive and telephony terminal in Toronto.

Contact: Mr. D.I. Towers (416) 965-0175

2. Interferometry - University of Toronto

The university plans to continue its work with the introduction of a phase-coherent system to the satellite-link long-baseline radio interferometer.

Contact: Dr. J.L. Yen (416) 978-8756

3. Telehealth - Health and Welfare Canada

This experiment will maintain a satellite-telephony link between a nursing station at Kaschechewan on James Bay and a base hospital at Moose Factory.

Contact: Mr. Bud Long (613) 992-5192

4. Time transfer between atomic clocks - National Research Council

This experiment will link research laboratories in Canada and the United States for the comparison of high-accuracy clocks.

Contact: Dr. C.C. Costain (613) 993-1003

5. Tele-education - University of Montreal

This proposal is for an experiment in nursing education.

Contact: Mr. Denis Noel (414) 343-6975

6. Community Communications - Taqramiut Nipingat Inc.

This experiment will establish a telephony network linking four Inuit communities in Nouveau Quebec.

Contact: Mr. P. Lumsden (613) 722-0912

7. Community Communications - Wa Wa Ta Native Communications Society

This experiment will establish audio links among five community radio stations in northwestern Ontario to facilitate distribution of programming to native people.

Contact: Mr. J. Morris (807) 737-1345

8. Teleconferencing - Université du Québec

This experiment will be an extension to a previous Hermes experiment and will re-establish video teleconferencing links between the communities of St. Raymond de Portneuf and Buckingham.

Contact: Mr. J.-P. Masse (514) 282-7313

9. Teleconferencing - Université du Québec

This experiment will be an extension to a previous Hermes experiment and will re-establish the video teleconferencing network between the U.Q. campuses in Hull and Rouyn. Course exchanges, discussions and team-teaching trials are planned.

Contact: Mr. Denis Laforte (819) 770-3360

10. Tele-education - Université du Québec, Trois Rivières

This experiment will be an extension to a previous Hermes experiment whereby UQTR would now be connected to a school in St. Norbert (in the greater Winnipeg area) for classroom teacher-training activities.

Contact: Mr. Fernand Gauthier (819) 376-5543

11. Teleconferencing - National Research Council/NASA

This experiment connected NRC in Ottawa, Spar Aerospace Ltd in Toronto and Johnson Space Center in Houston in a teleconferencing network for a series of technical discussions concerning the Shuttle Remote Manipulator System.

Contact: Dr. J.A. Hunter (613) 993-2110

12. Digital TV transmission - Department of Communications/COMSAT

A series of technical measurements will be made on the transmission of digitally encoded color video signals.

Contact: Mr. R. Matyas (613) 596-2112

13. Tele-education - Ontario Educational Communications Authority

This experiment will use Hermes ground stations to extend the OECA network to sites in northwestern Ontario. Programming will consist of the OECA "Summer Academy", a series of courses of interest to the general public.

Contact: Mr. P. Bowers (416) 484-2621

14. Teleconferencing - Ontario Educational Communications Authority

This experiment will establish a video teleconferencing link between Thunder Bay and Toronto for conducting teleconferences to determine the learning needs of communities in the Thunder Bay region.

Contact: Mr. P. Bowers (416) 484-2621

This experiment will establish a video teleconferencing link between Thunder Bay and Toronto for conducting teleconferences to determine the learning needs of communities in the Thunder Bay region.

Contact: Mr. P. Bowers (416) 484-2621

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CRTC APPOINTMENTS

OTTAWA, June 30, 1978 --- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today the appointment, by Order-in-Council, of Marrienne Barrie of St.Thomas, Ontario, and Gilles Soucy of Campbellton, N.B., as part-time commissioners of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission.

Miss Barrie graduated from Assumption University, Windsor with a degree in Commerce and from Osgood Hall Law School, Toronto and is Treasurer and legal adviser to Brookside Investments Limited of St.Thomas, Ontario. Admitted to the Ontario Bar in 1962, she has served as Administrative Director of the Special Senate Committee on Mass Media. Her appointment, effective September 1, 1978, is for five years.

Mr. Soucy began his career with the New Brunswick Department of Transportation in 1960 and has been Director and City Treasurer of the City of Campbellton since 1968. He also serves as Secretary of various municipal organizations in New Brunswick. His appointment, effective July 1, 1978, is for five years.

-30-



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185





# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## NEW TECHNOLOGY DEVELOPED IN THE DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNICATIONS

### COULD PAVE THE WAY FOR TWO-WAY TV SERVICES IN CANADA

OTTAWA, August 15, 1978 — The Department of Communications has developed a technology which could have profound effects on communications in Canada, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé announced today. It consists of a new two-way TV system, called Videotex. The development makes Canada a world leader in two-way television technology.

Users of the Canadian Videotex system will be able to retrieve, by phone or interactive cable, information stored in various computer data bases and have it displayed on modified TV receivers or business video terminals. Users would also be able to transmit graphic, tonal or textual information to each other or to a data bank. Connected to the TV would be a pushbutton unit like a pocket calculator or a keyboard unit like a typewriter for retrieving or inserting information.

Videotex, like systems rapidly being developed elsewhere in the world, particularly in England and France, will expand the capabilities of home TVs through the addition of new services. Although similar to these, the DOC developments represent a significant technological improvement over existing systems. As many people are aware, such systems would allow the introduction of such things as electronic newspapers, electronic mail, electronic publishing



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



by individuals, and many other business, entertainment and new home services, delivered electronically to home television receivers.

"The possibilities of the system," Mme Sauvé said, "are limited only by our imagination." Students could access many data bases for almost immediate display of data or graphics on their TV screens. Architects could transmit drawings to clients across town or across the country. Homebound persons could take university courses. The system would also make possible new outlets for artistic expression. Emergency services such as fire and burglar alarm systems could be provided. People in isolated areas would have access to a wide range of information and entertainment previously available only to those in the urban south.

Mme Sauvé said the new technology, when introduced, could have profound social and economic implications for the country, with particular impact on Canadian industry, education, balance of payments, public administration, health services, transportation, culture and mechanisms for financial transactions. She also said the technology, once developed into a full interactive network across Canada, offers enormous potential for increased leisure, universal access to knowledge, decentralization and participatory democracy by permitting Canadians to communicate and learn from one another more effectively than they ever have in the past. As well, the system would provide a low-energy alternative for many activities currently done by conventional transportation.

"This new technology also dovetails with a number of other recent developments, such as communications satellites, fibre optics, computer communications, and the interconnection of various advanced communications technologies, all of which are leading to what experts have been describing for some time as the post industrial or information society."

Mme Sauvé indicated the Department has already been in contact with a number of Canadian companies and organizations to explore the industrial and other possibilities and she has informed her provincial counterparts about the potential the new technology holds for Canadians.

Mme Sauvé said she has asked the Department of Communications to explore ways in which the technology could be further developed, tested and evaluated as quickly as possible. She emphasized that it was important to examine the introduction of this new technology in the context of a coordinated strategy, so that developments are not piecemeal but conform to overall objectives for communications in Canada. "With interactive television technology, we have the opportunity to introduce a system designed and manufactured by Canadians, and developed according to Canadian social and cultural needs -- not those of other countries. It may be our last opportunity," she said, "to innovate and refine a Canadian technology that will ensure a strong domestic electronics industry and contribute to the strengthening and enrichment of our cultural sovereignty."

She indicated the Department is ready to demonstrate the features and potential of this Canadian system to any Canadian organization contemplating interactive television systems. As well, the Minister said that she would be

pleased to describe the detailed features of the system to all of the provinces and encourage their participation in this exciting new development.

So far, the system has been demonstrated in laboratories at the Department's Communications Research Centre. Field trials are expected to start in 1979. The electronic package to be used in these field trials is being developed by Norpak Ltd. of Packenham, Ont., under licence to the Department of Communications. A \$245,000 contract was awarded to Norpak recently by the Department of Supply and Services to further develop interactive visual communications systems and hardware. Large scale integration in microprocessing is expected to bring the cost of the Videotex modules down to within reach of the mass market within the next four or five years.

Viewdata (or Prestel as it is known now), the British system now undergoing major market trials, allows users to interact with a central data base by a phone line connection. Graphic or textual information is then transmitted to specially equipped TV receivers almost immediately. The French equivalent to the Viewdata public information service is called Titan (sometimes referred to as Antiope).

Because of different TV standards between North America and Europe, both systems would have to be re-engineered before they could be introduced in North America, though both systems have already been offered to Canadian organizations.

Mme Sauvé said that because of the re-engineering and a number of technical limitations in the European systems, "My department has developed this second generation system at our Communications Research Centre and has demonstrated that these limitations can be overcome."

The Canadian system offers a much higher resolution of images displayed on the TV screen, and is superior to existing systems in such critical areas as flexibility, compatibility of data bases with different terminals and capacity for future growth.

A further development, which would allow direct terminal-to-terminal interaction, without the need to go through a central computer, has also been developed and will be a part of the system.

"The fact that similar systems are undergoing trials elsewhere in the world indicates that interactive technology will soon be with us," Mme Sauvé said. "Our challenge is to ensure that the Canadian system is developed, manufactured and introduced by Canadian industry. If we in Canada work together and act quickly, we can be in the forefront of interactive television technology."

## INTERACTIVE TELEVISION

The interactive television technology developed by the Department of Communications would, in an operating system, allow the user to perform three types of functions from his home or office:

1. Retrieval of information from any data bank linked to the system

Simply by using a button pad, similar to a telephone keypad, the user could call up any "page" of information held in any data bank linked to the system. The information is not restricted to textual material, but can include high quality colour graphics or half-tone pictures as well.

A typical system would, on command, present the user with a "menu" or list of subject areas from which the user would make a selection or a search for the desired material.

There is no theoretical limit to the amount of information that could be available on the system. News items and features, educational material, reference sources, are all possible -- in short, any written, graphic or tonal material.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Either a normal telephone line, a modified cable TV system or an optical fibre could be used to transmit the information. Any "page" dialled up would be displayed on the screen within seconds, and large numbers of users could access data banks simultaneously.

The equipment cost to the user is expected to be in the \$200 to \$300 range, in addition to the cost of his television receiver.

## 2. Insertion of information into data banks

By adding a typewriter-like keyboard to the basic keypad, the user will then be able to introduce textual information into a data bank for retrieval by others. With the addition of other devices, such as a joy stick (a lever which controls a marker on the TV screen) or a light pen (with which a line can be "drawn" on the screen), the user can also create graphics for insertion in a data bank.

These devices would allow any individual, sitting at home or in an office, to become, in effect, an "electronic" publisher. In an operating system, such a publisher would likely be paid a fee every time his information is retrieved by another user.

## 3. Direct interaction with any other interactive TV terminal

The interactive equipment developed at the Department of Communications would also allow for direct interaction between two or more terminals. Thus,

with the same devices listed in (2) above, a user could type a message or letter, or create a graphic and send it directly to any other terminal on the system.

Such a system would also allow the receiver to "manipulate" the information sent, for example, by adding lines or elements to a graphic, or answering or editing textual material. The two terminals can be thought of as a single electronic blackboard, upon which each user can see, introduce, change or erase material. This would also allow for interactive TV games such as chess between two players each at different locations.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, August 30, 1978 -- Canadian tax policies to preserve and strengthen the financial and artistic viability of Canada's broadcasting industry are an internal fiscal matter, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  said today.

The Minister was responding to questions about Tuesday's filing in Washington of a petition by several U.S. border TV stations, seeking retaliatory trade measures against Canada for its 1976 Income Tax Act amendment affecting Canadian advertisers on American stations.

"Let's remember that when the Canadian tax amendment was enacted, Canadian advertisers were spending about \$20 million a year to buy time on U.S. border TV stations for commercials aimed at Canadians," said Mme Sauv . "This diversion of funds was restraining development of the Canadian broadcasting system."

"The complaint ignores the fact that U.S. border stations are not licensed to serve Canadian communities. Twenty million dollars represented about 10% of total Canadian TV advertising revenues but only roughly half a per cent of U.S. stations' total ad revenues in 1974," the Minister said.

"This money is important to us. It amounted to more than the net after-tax profits of the entire Canadian television system.

"But it's more than just a question of money. The revenues being diverted to U.S. stations were vitally important, particularly to new and developing Canadian stations trying to make a meaningful contribution to the binding together of a vast nation with two official

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



languages." The Minister pointed out that Canadian broadcasters do not enjoy the same economies of scale from which U.S. broadcasters, who do not have any obligation to fulfill objectives of Canada's Broadcasting Act, benefit.

The amendment to the Income Tax Act, proclaimed law September 22, 1976, disallows, as a deduction against income tax, costs incurred for advertising placed on a foreign station but directed primarily to Canadian audiences.

The Minister reminded questioners the measure was necessary to encourage Canadian advertisers to use Canadian broadcasting stations to reach Canadian audiences, thereby helping ensure this country's broadcasters would have the resources to contribute to cultural development, national cohesion and a strengthening of national identity. It was also intended to provide an enhanced ability to produce high-quality programming attractive to Canadian audiences.

Mme Sauvé also provided figures (see attachment) showing major U.S. border stations which had been enjoying a large portion of the twenty million dollars diverted from the Canadian broadcasting industry suffered no serious financial loss after the amendment went into effect.

Ref. J.M. Bryan  
(613) 995-8185

SEE ATTACHED



ATTACHMENT

Recent Annual reports of Capital Cities Communications and Taft Broadcasting (owners of WKBW-TV and WGR-TV) report no serious financial loss due to the broadcasting provisions of the Income Tax Act:

- (a) "Approximately one per cent of the company's 1976 revenues came from Canadian advertisers, some of which was for advertising intended to reach U.S. audiences and would be expected to continue. We do not expect the development to have a material effect on the company's 1977 earnings ..." (Capital Cities Communications, 1976 Annual Report, New York, Page 6)
- (b) "...our revenues from Canadian advertisers have accounted for approximately two million dollars of broadcasting net revenues. This revenue source is currently showing declines of 50%. However, increased local TV revenues from the Buffalo market should offset much of the Canadian revenue shortfall and we do not see this as a long term impediment to the progress of our broadcast group" (Taft Broadcasting Company, Annual Report, March 31, 1977, Cincinnati, Page 7)
- (c) Marketing Magazine on May 9, 1977 quote WIVB's General Manager, George Lilly, as saying "We have filled our inventory up with clients in New York State and we're not having any difficulty in selling".

(According to the broadcasters' petition, American border stations earned more than \$9 million from Canadian advertisers in 1977)



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## UNITED STATES, CANADA EXCHANGE INFORMATION ON SPACE PROGRAMS

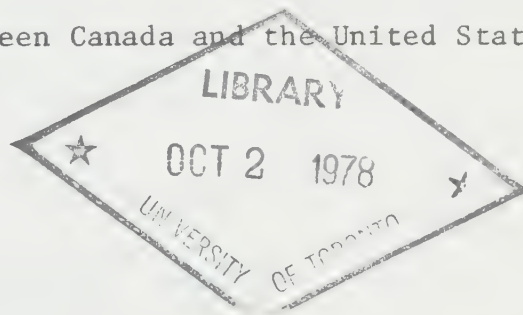
OTTAWA, September 19, 1978 -- A team of officials from NASA, headed by NASA Administrator Dr. Robert Frosch is conducting a day-long session with Canadian Space officials today, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  has announced.

Canada participates with the United States in a number of joint programs in space and one of the purposes of the visit is to exchange information about each country's future space programs and plans.

The NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration) team will also tour the research facilities of the Department of Communications west of Ottawa, mission control for Canada's experimental and scientific satellites, and the facilities of the Canada Centre for Remote Sensing, of the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources.

Mme Sauv  said the visit, the first to Canada by Dr. Frosch since assuming his position as NASA Administrator, is tangible evidence of the continuing close relationship between Canada and the United States in the space field.

-30-



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

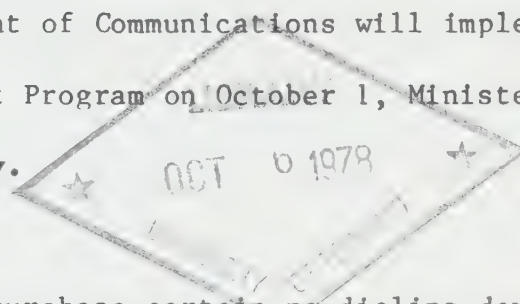
Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## DOC IMPLEMENTS TERMINAL ATTACHMENT PROGRAM PHASE II

OTTAWA, September 27, 1978 -- The Department of Communications will implement the second phase of its Terminal Attachment Program on October 1, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today.



The program enables the public to purchase certain no-dialing devices certified by the Department rather than having to lease the equipment and a coupler from the telecommunications carrier. The program is also intended to stimulate development of a wider range of communications devices for the Canadian public and encourage development of Canadian industry.

Under the first phase of the program which began April 30, 1976, the kinds of devices which may be certified by the Department for direct attachment to the facilities of federally regulated telecommunications carriers in Canada are automatic telephone answering machines, automatic telephone answering and recording machines, and plugs and jacks. The categories of equipment which will be eligible for certification under Phase II will be:

### Non-addressing alarm devices:

Dial-in units which provide information on the status of alarms, security and other services from a remote location.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Graphic communications equipment:

This equipment transmits hand-written information such as a message or sketch to one or a number of points at the same time as the message is written or the sketch is drawn.

Facsimile:

Facsimile terminals send or receive graphic documents over network facilities.

Biophysical medical terminals:

This equipment is used for sending and receiving data pertaining to medical behavioural characteristics for remote patient monitoring and analytical purposes.

Modems:

Devices which convert digital signals to analog and vice-versa.

Traffic measuring equipment:

Equipment which measures use of telephone services.

To provide the public with the information required for obtaining certification of these additional kinds of equipment the Department has issued the following three documents:

- (1) Certification Standard CS-02, Issue 1: a document which sets forth minimum technical requirements for certification of Phase II terminal equipment,

- (2) Certification Procedure CP-01, Issue 2: a document outlining procedures to obtain certification of terminal equipment, and
- (3) TRC-52 Program Application Notes: a document intended to help in the interpretation of the Procedure and Standards associated with the Terminal Attachement Program, and provides descriptions of categories of terminal devices.

Madame Sauvé praised the cooperative spirit of industry, users and interested provincial governments as well as the federally regulated common carriers in developing the technical standards and procedures necessary to operate the program and said the department will continue to seek their views.

Certification testing of all devices, domestic or imported, will be carried out in Canada. Initially, certification tests will be performed in the department's laboratory. In the future however, other Canadian laboratories could apply for approval from the department to do this testing.

Details of the program, together with procedures to be followed in obtaining equipment certification, may be obtained from the nearest regional office of the Department of Communications, or from the department's Telecommunications Regulatory Service at 300 Slater Street, Ottawa. The standards being issued this month take effect October 1, 1978.

REGIONAL OFFICES

Atlantic Region:	Department of Communications 7th Floor Terminal Plaza Building P.O. Box 1290 1222 Main Street MONCTON, N.B. E1C 8P9
Quebec Region:	Department of Communications 20th Floor 2085 Union Street MONTREAL, Quebec H3A 2C3
Ontario Region:	Department of Communications 9th Floor 55 St. Clair Avenue East TORONTO, Ontario M4T 1M2
Central Region:	Department of Communications 2300-One Lombard Place WINNIPEG, Manitoba R3B 2Z8
Pacific Region:	Department of Communications 325 Granville Street, Room 300 Vancouver, B.C. V6C 1S5



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

SAUDI ARABIAN MINISTER LEAVES CANADA AFTER SUCCESSFUL  
VISIT THAT HIGHLIGHTED CANADIAN EXPERTISE IN TELECOMMUNICATIONS

OTTAWA, September 28, 1978 -- Saudi Arabia's minister of post and telecommunications, Dr. A.D. Kayyal, leaves Ottawa today after a successful three-day visit to Canada.

Here at the invitation of Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé, Dr. Kayyal held talks with Madame Sauvé and other members of the Federal Cabinet, met senior executives of Bell Canada and Telesat Canada and toured both Bell and government telecommunications facilities in Ottawa and Toronto. His party was also briefed by government officials on Canadian industrial capabilities of interest to Saudi Arabia.

Bell is part of a three-nation consortium which last December won a multi-billion dollar contract for the modernization and expansion of the Saudi telephone system. Biggest job of its kind in history, the project is bringing Canada \$1.1 billion over five years and some 500 management level jobs for Canadians.

Madame Sauvé said Dr. Kayyal's visit confirms Saudi Arabia's interest in Canadian high-technology products, systems and expertise and underlines this country's international reputation as a world leader in telecommunications.

The Minister took her Saudi Arabian counterpart on a tour Tuesday of the department of communications' research laboratories near Ottawa, where Canada's world-leading position in direct broadcasting satellite technology was demonstrated. Dr. Kayyal was also shown a novel trail and remote camp radio system and Videotex -- the department's new interactive television technology, which it believes to be the best in the world.

- 30 -



Ref: Mike Bryan (613) 995-8185

Government of Canada

Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada

Ministère des Communications

Information Services

300 Slater Street

Ottawa K1A 0C8

(613) 995-8185

Services d'information

300, rue Slater

Ottawa K1A 0C8

(613) 995-8185

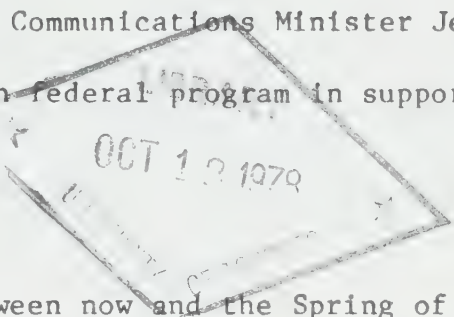


# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## OTTAWA COMMITS \$20.4 MILLION TO SUPPORT SPACE INDUSTRY

### Canada will have complete facility to build and test satellites

Ottawa, October 4, 1978 -- Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  today unveiled details of a \$20.4 million federal program in support of Canada's high-technology space industries.



The money, to be spent between now and the Spring of 1982, will be used to expand and upgrade the Department of Communications' David Florida Laboratory near Ottawa, to provide Canadian industry with a complete and fully-equipped national centre for the test and assembly of complete communications satellites and space subsystems. The private sector will use the facility on a rental basis.

"The expanded David Florida Laboratory will further a priority objective of Canada's space program -- that of developing and demonstrating a Canadian capability to act as prime contractor for the supply of complete satellites for both domestic and export markets," said Mme Sauv .

"If we want to increase employment and reduce trade deficits, there could be no better investment of public funds now than in high-technology industries such as space and telecommunications, where Canadians already enjoy a considerable technological prominence," she added.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



An immediate benefit of the program will be that Spar Aerospace Limited of Toronto and Montreal will be able to use the improved DOC facility to assemble Telesat Canada's third ANIK-C series spacecraft in Canada. Other companies located across Canada will also benefit from the facility.

The Minister noted the world market for satellites, ground stations and related hardware and systems is expanding rapidly. "As more and more nations implement their own domestic satellite systems and established systems require replacement spacecraft, Canada must be in a strong position to effectively compete for a considerable share of this international market," the Minister added.

"Most other countries competing in the space business have government-provided test and assembly facilities. Our provision of this improved facility will ensure equal access to the best possible test and assembly facilities for all Canadian space companies."

Mme Sauvé said that the program was in line with recent recommendations by the Science Council and by the Task Force report on the Electronics Industries issued last month.

Of the total \$20.4 million allocation announced by the Minister, over \$15 million will be for capital expenditures; \$3 million for operating expenses and \$2.4 million for special facilities and services required for the ANIK-C integration program.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## FEDERAL GOVERNMENT RE-INTRODUCES COMMUNICATIONS LEGISLATION

OTTAWA, Nov. 9, 1978 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  today re-introduced communications legislation aimed at making federal regulation of communications more responsive to technological change and to provincial concerns.

Mme Sauv  said the Bill, to be known as the Telecommunications Act, was being introduced this early in the session because of the various mechanisms it provides for accommodating provincial concerns about the responsibility for the regulation of communications in Canada. She said that introduction of the Bill is evidence of the importance the federal government attaches to discussions of constitutional renewal in the field of communications which are being undertaken by the Constitutional Committee.

Mme Sauv  said she hoped that, with the co-operation of all members of the House, the Bill would receive speedy passage.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The legislation is similar to Bill C-24, given first reading January 26, 1978, which reflected intensive consultations with the provinces and discussions with the industry. Mme Sauvé said the new federal legislation received warm support at the federal-provincial conference of Communications Ministers last March.

The Telecommunications Act is the second phase of a two-step legislative process. Phase I, which came into force on April 1, 1976, amalgamated the former Canadian Radio-Television Commission and the Telecommunications Committee of the Canadian Transport Commission into a single regulatory body, the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

The new legislation will clarify and consolidate existing federal legislation. It will replace four existing statutes and parts of two others by a single body of national telecommunications law.

The Act will establish a clear demarcation between the functions and responsibilities of the Government and the CRTC. It also contains provisions by which policy and delegation agreements with provincial governments can be implemented.

(more)

Under the Telecommunications Act, the CRTC will continue to regulate and supervise the activities of all broadcasting undertakings in Canada, as well as those telecommunication common carriers which are subject to federal regulation.

Madame Sauvé has emphasized that three features of the legislation are particularly important.

First, the Bill opens with a clear statement of national telecommunications policy. The policy, developed in consultation with provincial governments, will serve as a basis for decisions taken by the CRTC, the Governor in Council and the Ministers. The policy consists of 17 objectives covering all aspects of telecommunications, including systems and services, broadcasting, radio-communications and research. The first statement reads: "Efficient telecommunications systems are essential to the sovereignty and integrity of Canada, and telecommunication services and production resources should be developed and administered so as to safeguard, enrich and strengthen the cultural, political, social and economic fabric of Canada."

Second, the Act will allow the Minister of Communications, with the consent of the Governor in Council, to enter into agreements with the provinces and gives the Governor in Council the power to authorize the sharing of certain federal regulatory functions with provincial agencies. Mme Sauvé said that the significance of this feature is that it provides a mechanism for harmonizing

(more)

federal and provincial communications objectives. This mechanism could provide a means for implementing interim arrangements for sharing regulatory responsibility which would reflect the outcome of the discussions to be undertaken by First Ministers in February, following the report of the Constitutional Committee.

Third, the Bill empowers the Governor in Council to issue broad policy directions to the CRTC with respect to the national telecommunications policy. Mme Sauvé emphasized that the Act does not, however, authorize the Governor in Council to issue directions to the CRTC with respect to the issue, amendment or renewal of particular broadcasting licences, the content of programming, the application of standards of quality to programming, or the restriction of freedom of expression.

The provisions of the existing Broadcasting Act relating to the role and status of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation are essentially unchanged in the new legislation.

(more)

The Telecommunications Act will replace the Broadcasting Act, Telegraphs Act, the CRTC Act, the Radio Act and those provisions of the Railway Act and the National Transportation Act which apply to telecommunications.

A summary of the Telecommunications Act is attached.

Copies of the legislation are available from The Canadian Government Printing Bureau.

## TELECOMMUNICATIONS ACT -- A SUMMARY

Phase II telecommunications legislation, to be known as the Telecommunications Act, will consolidate and clarify existing federal legislation so as to establish a single coherent embodiment of national telecommunications law. The bill is essentially the same as Bill C-24 of the last session. The proposed Telecommunications Act will replace in toto the existing Broadcasting Act, CRTC Act, Radio Act, and Telegraphs Act, as well as those provisions of the Railway Act, and National Transportation Act which apply to telecommunications.

Part I of the bill (SS.2-14), is particularly important in that it enunciates a national telecommunications policy (S.3). This general Part also contains a description of the respective areas of responsibility of the Minister of Communications and of the Secretary of State of Canada (S.6 and S.8). In addition, it empowers the Governor in Council to authorize the sharing of federal regulatory functions or responsibilities with provincial agencies pursuant to federal/provincial agreements negotiated by the Minister of Communications (S.7), to issue broad policy directions to the CRTC (S.9), and to set aside, vary or refer back specific decisions of the Commission (S.11).

Part II (SS. 15-31) of the proposed legislation provides for the continuation of the enlarged CRTC. The CRTC will continue to regulate and supervise the activities of all broadcasting undertakings in Canada, as well as those telecommunication common carriers which are subject to federal regulation (B.C. Telephone, Bell Canada, CN Telecommunications, Telesat, and Teleglobe).

Part III (SS.32-40) outlines the regulatory powers of the CRTC with regard to broadcasting transmitting and broadcasting receiving undertakings (CATV). These regulatory powers are essentially unchanged from those which now exist under the Broadcasting Act.

Part IV (SS.40-55) defines the role and status of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation. Only minor technical amendments have been made to the counterpart provisions in the Broadcasting Act. Similarly the policy objectives in S.3 which are specifically applicable to the CBC (S.3(k) and (l)) are the same as those in S.3 of the Broadcasting Act.

Part V (SS.55-62) will give the CRTC much more flexible and precise powers of regulation over the federally regulated telecommunication carriers than currently exist under the somewhat outdated provisions of the Telegraphs Act and the Railway Act. Explicit powers of the regulatory body to order such things as extension of service, terminal and systems interconnection, and pole attachment, may be found in S.55. The power in S.56 relating to new entry and major extensions is new: it is intended in part to deal with the issue of intercarrier competition which is of considerable interest to provincial governments. Similarly S.59, relating to acquisitions, disposals and incorporations, by federally regulated telecommunication carriers, of businesses involved in telecommunications, is a new power: a counterpart provision exists in the National Transportation Act but it applies only to transportation companies.

Part VI (SS.63-68) contains an updated version of the Radio Act and those parts of the Telegraphs Act which relate to submarine cables. One new provision in this part provides for the delegation by the Minister of Communications to designated department officials, of the power to suspend radio station licences for a period of 30 days.

Part VII (SS.69-77) contains the enforcement provisions; Part VIII (SS.78-85) contains the necessary transitional provisions.

October 1978

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## UNILINGUAL FRANCOPHONE PILOTS TO BE ABLE TO OBTAIN

### CERTIFICATE TO OPERATE AN AIRCRAFT RADIO

OTTAWA, November 22, 1978 -- Unilingual Francophone pilots will no longer be required to have a knowledge of English in order to obtain the Department of Communications certificate needed to operate aircraft radios, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  said today.

"Since adoption of bilingualism at Quebec airports, safety requirements dealing with voice communications are being adequately met by provisions of MOT Air Navigation Order 1, Series 1," said Madame Sauv , announcing her decision to do away with the English requirement.

All pilots are required to have a restricted radiotelephone operator's certificate in order to use air-to-ground radios installed aboard aircraft. The decision allows unilingual Francophone pilots to qualify for this certificate.

-30-

Marc Lessard  
Office of the Minister  
(613) 593-5263



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

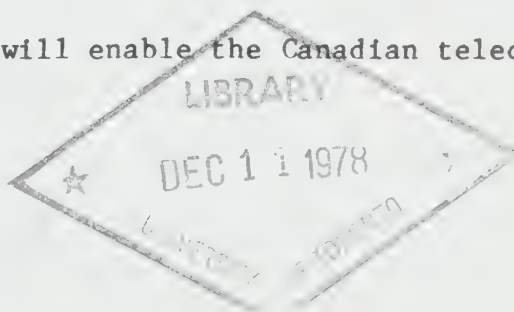
INDEPENDENT COMMITTEE TO RECOMMEND ON  
THE FUTURE OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS IN CANADA

OTTAWA, November 30, 1978 -- An independent group of distinguished, informed Canadians has been asked to produce specific recommendations on a strategy to restructure the Canadian telecommunications system to contribute more effectively to the safeguarding of Canada's sovereignty, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  announced today.

The group, to be known as the Consultative Committee on the Implications of Telecommunications for Canadian Sovereignty, has been asked to prepare its recommendations by the end of February, 1979.

In making the announcement, Mme Sauv  said that the Canadian communications system is at a crossroads and that there is growing concern about the extent to which the system might be falling short of expectations and opportunities. "At the same time, new technology, already on our doorstep, is precipitating radical new opportunities and new problems", she said.

"These factors, and the speed at which changes are occurring, make it imperative that solutions are found which will enable the Canadian telecom-



...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



munications system, and the industries supplying it, to take early advantage of the opportunities of converging technologies, and that, as we enter 'the information society', the architecture of the Canadian telecommunications system can respond and contribute to the goals of Canadian unity and sovereignty," the Minister said.

The Committee is to make its recommendations on the future of the Canadian telecommunications system with particular reference to new technologies such as fibre optics, satellites, interactive television and computer technology.

Mme Sauvé said that its terms of reference take into consideration the need for Canadian software and hardware manufacturers to meet foreign competition as well as the role of broadcasting in contributing to the preservation of the sovereignty of Canada, including:

- the use of communications satellites to the best advantage of Canadians
- the importation of foreign programming;
- the status of cable companies in relation to broadcasting and to the common carriers in the provision of new services;
- the framework and timing for the introduction of pay television nationally.

"Normally, problems of the scope and complexity of those facing our communications system would be the subject of an extensive inquiry," the Minister said, "but given the pressing nature of many of these problems, and the need to avoid ad-hoc decision making at all costs, a prolonged inquiry is not the answer at this time. In addition, both the problems and the alternative solutions are sufficiently well documented that the committee will not have to engage in formal hearings, in elaborate fact finding or detailed policy development."

Mme Sauvé said, however, that the Committee's terms of reference would not include matters of jurisdiction or constitutional issues, since the First

Ministers are examining these particular questions.

The Minister said she was confident that the committee, because of the calibre of its membership, and its independence from government would produce a report which would generate constructive public debate on the future of telecommunications in Canada.

Committee Members are as follows:

Chairman: -- Hon. John V. Clyne. Mr. Clyne, of Vancouver, B.C., is Chancellor of the University of British Columbia. He was formerly Chairman of the Board of MacMillan Bloedel Limited and was, from 1950 to 1957, a Justice of the Supreme Court of British Columbia. He has served as sole Royal Commissioner in three public inquiries.

Vice-Chairman: Guy Fournier. Mr. Fournier, a Quebec journalist, author, and television and film writer, has written more than 200 dramatic programs for television and more than 50 film scripts. He is a member of the l'Association des Producteurs de Films du Québec and the Canadian Society of Writers and Composers, a Director of l'Institut québécois du Cinéma and was, for three years, President of the Artists and Writers Federation of Canada.

Member: Lloyd R. Shaw. Mr. Shaw, of Halifax N.S. and St. John, N.B. holds chairmanships in several corporations including L.E. Shaw Ltd., and Clayton Developments Ltd.; and serves as director of a number of associations including the Canadian Civil Liberties Association, the Canadian Council of Christians and Jews, and the Committee for an Independent Canada. Mr. Shaw also served on the Nova Scotia Royal Commission on Election Financing and Related Matters, was a Vice President of the Atlantic Provinces Economic Council and is with the Nova Scotia joint Labour-Management Committee.

Member: Robert Fulford. Mr. Fulford of Toronto, a journalist and broadcaster, has been editor of Saturday Night since 1968.

Member, Beland H. Honderich. Mr. Honderich is Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Torstar Corporation and Toronto Star Newspapers Limited and is publisher of the Toronto Star. Mr. Honderich was a founding member of the Ontario Press Council.

Member, Alphonse Ouimet. Mr. Ouimet, of Pointe Claire, Que., is Chairman of the Board of Telesat Canada and was, from 1958 to 1967, President of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation. He is also Chairman of the Communications Research Advisory Board, which provides advice to the Department of Communications on matters relating to communications research.

Member, Dianne Narvik. Ms. Narvik, of Calgary, Alberta is a Vice-President of Alberta Gas Trunk Line Company Ltd. and a Director of Foothills Pipe Lines (Yukon) Ltd. She is also a Director of the Calgary Philharmonic Society and the Junior Achievement of Southern Alberta.

Secretary, Henry Hindley. Mr. Hindley, of Ottawa, a consultant, writer, editor and translator, was, from 1969 to 1975, with the Department of Communications, first as Executive Director of the Telecommission Studies and later as Special Policy Advisor to the Deputy Minister during which time he participated in the preparation of the Green and Grey Papers of Communications Policy and new telecommunications legislation. In 1965, Mr. Hindley was secretary of the Advisory Committee of Broadcasting (Fowler Committee), and, as Assistant Under - Secretary of State, participated in the drafting of the 1966 White Paper of Broadcasting and the 1968 Broadcasting Act.

Associate Secretary, Pierre Billon, an author and writer, is Director General, Policy Coordination, Department of Communications and former Secretary to the CRTC (1974-76). He will be in charge of liaison between the Committee and the Department of Communications.

- 30 -

For further information: John S. Davidson (613) 995-8185

Marc Lessard, Minister's Office (613) 993-5263

The Consultative Committee on the implications of  
TELECOMMUNICATIONS FOR CANADIAN SOVEREIGNTY

1. Introduction

The Canadian communications system is in the midst of a crisis more profound than any that has affected it since the 1920's. The Prime Minister, the Leader of the Opposition, the Secretary of State, the Federal and Provincial Ministers of Communications, the President of the CBC, the past Chairman of the CRTC and other knowledgeable participants in the field have all expressed their reservations publicly about the extent to which the system is falling short of expectations and opportunities. Many have drawn special attention to the need to safeguard Canada's cultural sovereignty as Graham Spry, Sir John Aird, Vincent Massey, Robert Fowler and Judy LaMarsh had done before them. The recent hearings before the CRTC on the CBC license renewals, the spectacle of U.S. broadcasters seeking redress against Canadian legislation and tax laws, and the recent applications by the cable companies to deliver non-programming services (which are opposed by the telephone companies) provided other opportunities for the public and the media to add their voices to the chorus of concern.

At the same time, developments in the areas of fibre optics, satellites, interactive television and computer technology threaten not only to exacerbate the existing problems, but also to bring new ones and new opportunities in their wake. Among other things, these new technologies could: radically increase the amount of American television programming entering the country; further aggravate the balance of payments problem in electronic products; increase the difficulties being experienced by the Post Office, schools and universities, publishing industries and the clients they are meant to serve; and compromise the country's capacity to control future fundamental economic, political, social and cultural directions. On the other hand, these technologies could - if imaginatively and quickly applied - permit a significant re-patriation of the electronics industry, provide a new base for the development of the high technology area, stimulate the growth of a whole host of new programming and information-based services, and generate more private support for a revitalized cultural sector. It is apparent, therefore, that the new technologies constitute both threats and opportunities, which could be used either to further erode Canadian sovereignty or to strengthen it considerably. The current debate by those involved in the Delta project, sponsored by the Universities of Montreal and McGill to deal with the future of the telecommunications system, and the Report of the Communications Research Advisory Board, have helped focus attention on some key issues.

Traditionally, problems of this scope and complexity have been made the subject of extensive investigations, carried out over long periods of time by large supposedly representative and diverse groups. In this case, however, given the pressing nature of the difficulties, a major inquiry would take so long that the history of ad hoc decision-making characteristic of the past would lead to solutions too late to be effectively applied. Besides, both the problems and the range of alternative solutions are sufficiently well documented that it should not be necessary to engage in elaborate fact-finding or detailed development of different policy options. For these reasons, and because of the urgency and far-reaching implications of the issue, the Minister of Communications has invited a small group of wise and experienced Canadians to examine the solutions that are currently under discussion and decide in the near future which of the alternatives are most likely to help solve the current problems.

Members of the Consultative Committee will not be representatives of regions, groups, industries etc. but will be appointed and serve in their own right as individuals. Should members wish to employ technical advisers or test their tentative conclusions on various informed Canadians, the resources of the Department of Communications will be available to make such arrangements as are necessary.

Because the subject matter is not only economic and technical but deals ultimately with the stuff of the spirit and imagination, it has been deemed appropriate to establish the Consultative Committee as an 'arms-length' committee, entirely free of any formal relationship to the machinery of government but fully serviced by it. The reason for this is to ensure that there is no confusion in the public mind about the independence of the Committee Members, while - at the same time - providing them with access to all available information, analyses and studies. This question of the independence and non-partisan character of the committee is particularly important, since the value of its final report will derive in part from the public examination and debate it will stimulate.

## 2. Purpose of the Committee

The Committee will be asked to produce specific recommendations on a strategy to restructure the Canadian telecommunications system to contribute more effectively to the safeguarding of Canada's sovereignty.

## 3. Terms of Reference

The Committee will be asked to make recommendations on the future of the Canadian telecommunications system in relation to new technologies and the need for Canadian software and hard-

ware resources to meet foreign competition, with particular reference to the role of broadcasting in contributing to the preservation of the sovereignty of Canada, including:

- (a) the use of communications satellites to the best advantage of Canada;
- (b) the importation of foreign programming;
- (c) the status of the cable companies in relation to broadcasting and to the common carriers in the provision of new services;
- (d) the framework and timing for the introduction of pay-television nationally.

The Committee is expected to approach its work, bearing in mind the current mixture of Canadian attitudes toward government intervention, regulation and public expenditure. And, while recognizing the interests of both federal and provincial administrations in the subject matter, the Committee will not deal with constitutional matters of jurisdiction, since the First Ministers have agreed to examine this particular issue.

In order to meet the specified objectives as expeditiously as possible, it is proposed that the Committee should complete its work by the first week of February, 1979, so that its final report can be made public in both official languages by mid or late February, 1979. Every effort will be made to continue to keep the federal and provincial governments and the various interest groups abreast of the progress of the Committee's deliberations and to accommodate the views of as wide a constituency as possible without holding formal hearings.

Members of the Committee include:

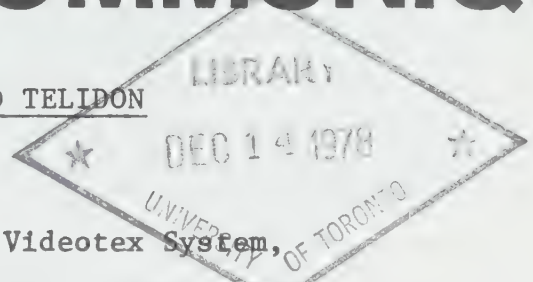
Chairman:	Hon. John V. Clyne
Vice-Chairman:	Mr. Guy Fournier
Members:	Mr. Lloyd Shaw Mr. Robert Fulford Mr. Beland Honderich Mr. Alphonse Ouimet Ms. Dianne Narvik
Secretary:	Mr. Henry Hindley
Associate Secretary:	Mr. Pierre Billon



A1  
48  
-N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CANADIAN VIDEOTEX SYSTEM RENAMED TELIDON



OTTAWA, December 7 , 1978 -- The Canadian Videotex System, regarded by many as a significant technological advance over other known forms of two-way television, has been renamed Telidon, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today.

Telidon is a compound of the Greek "tele", an adverb meaning "far", "far away", and "idon", which is one of the forms of the Greek verb "horao", meaning "I saw", "I perceived" or "I know". The Minister said the technology is being christened Telidon to distinguish it from other videotex-like technologies developed in other countries. Videotex is an internationally agreed upon generic term for interactive television technologies.

Telidon, a development of the Communications Research Centre, the research arm of the Department of Communications, will make possible many new interactive services whereby users would be able to telephone a data bank and have written or graphic material transmitted back by coaxial cable, phone or optical fibre for display on their TV receiver. As well, the technology would permit direct terminal-to-terminal contact for the transmittal and display of information. The DOC is developing a number of field trials with industry for early 1979 which would test the new technology.

...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Mme Sauvé said the department is seeking international agreement on technical standards for videotex technologies. "This technological advance once again shows that Canadians can produce technologies as good as or superior to those of any other nation. What we need is the collective will to exploit these developments as rapidly as possible for the benefit of Canadian industry, indeed of all Canadians."

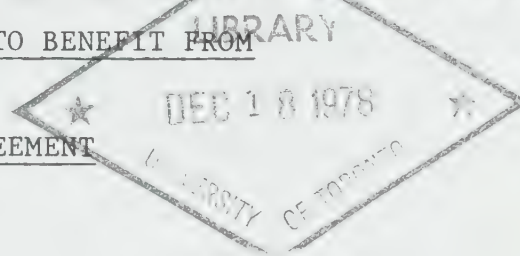


# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

2/A1  
p8  
- N26

CANADIAN SPACE INDUSTRY TO BENEFIT FROM

INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENT



OTTAWA, December 8, 1978 -- The Canadian space industry may find more opportunities in Europe as a result of an agreement between Canada and the European Space Agency (ESA) to be signed tomorrow, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  today announced.

Mme Sauv  said the agreement provides for closer co-operation in space programs between Canada and the Agency and its 11 member-countries. Since the emphasis of the agreement is on cooperation on specific projects in this high technology field, Canadian industry stands to benefit.

The Agreement will be signed tomorrow in Montreal by Mme Sauv  and Rob Gibson, Director General of ESA. It will allow Canada to participate more fully in Agency activities. In the past, Canada has had **observer** status in the ESA council.

Mme Sauv  said there are a number of tangible benefits to Canada which will result from the signing of this Agreement. Canada will participate in the ESA long-term study program, enabling Canada to interact at an early stage with plans for proposed future space projects. There is a substantial commonality of interest between ESA and Canada in space matters, particularly in communications satellites and earth observation satellites. In addition to working with ESA on studies of future programs in these areas, Canadian industry will now have improved

...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



opportunities to obtain contracts to provide components and subsystems for European spacecraft now in the development stage.

Before the Agreement, Canadian companies were handicapped in competing for ESA contracts as the Agency is required to use European sources of supply. As a result of collaboration with ESA in planning of new space projects, Canada expects to develop new co-operative space programs with Europe. From such programs, new working relationships will develop between Canadian companies and their European counterparts, which in turn will lead to other business prospects for both space and non-space sales.

The agreement, which will come into force January 1, 1979, is in keeping with the spirit of the Framework Agreement for Commercial and Economic Co-operation which was signed on October 1, 1976. by Canada and the European Common Market.

Members of the European Space Agency are Belgium, Denmark, France, the Federal Republic of Germany, Great Britain, Ireland, Italy, the Netherlands, Spain, Sweden and Switzerland.

For further information: Mr. John S. Davidson  
(613) 995-8079

Mr. Marc Lessard  
(613) 593-5263



CAI  
CPS  
-N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Sauvé stresses need to continue optical fibre research

OTTAWA, December 12, 1978 -- Canada needs to press on with optical fibre research and development in order to maintain its leadership in this important new technology, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé said at the inauguration of a field trial in Yorkville, Toronto where for the first time in North America households will be connected to a telephone system using fibre optics.

Mme Sauvé congratulated Bell Canada for the field trial and described the occasion as "historic".

A number of countries around the world are developing the hair-thin optical fibres as a means to replace copper wires and to carry many forms of communications, such as television, radio, telephone and data signals. "We can all take pride in the fact that we in Canada are playing a leading role in the development of this important new technology," Mme Sauvé said.

The Minister also observed that "co-operation between government and industry is not automatic or in any sense easily achieved." Despite the "formidable difficulties, it is more important than ever that government and industry co-operate so as to ensure that our balance of payments is a healthy one and that as many desirable jobs as possible remain in Canada in circumstances that permit the consumer to obtain the best possible value for his dollar."

She said she was encouraged by Bell's "bold and enlightened decision making" in participating in the joint government-industry fibre optics field trial in Elie, Manitoba, even though it is not taking place in Bell Canada's territory. In the Elie project, both telephone and cable television will be delivered on a single fibre.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Department of Communications (DOC) will also be participating with Bell Canada in Yorkville in a demonstration of the Canadian videotex system, which has been renamed Telidon and which was developed at DOC's Communications Research Centre. DOC and Bell Northern Research both had developed ideas for a Canadian videotex system yet, said the Minister, both will be cooperating in videotex trials early in the new year "in the interests of ensuring that the best possible system for Canadians is developed".

On the issue of Bell's procurement practices, the Minister referred to the smaller companies that manufacture telphony equipment. Many of these small but healthy and dynamic electronics companies which are Canadian owned and controlled and some of which are spinoffs from BNR could "supply products even to you where it is clear...they can compete on favorable terms. I firmly believe that such a posture is not only in the better interest of the Canadian people and of your subscribers, but also ultimately in the better interests of your shareholders."



AI  
CDS  
-N26

Government  
Publication

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

TV DISTRIBUTION AND OTHER NEW SATELLITE SERVICES  
TO BE REFINED IN TRIALS WITH CANADA'S NEXT "Anik"



Ottawa, December 12, 1978 --- When a 116-foot NASA Delta rocket streaks into the early-evening sky off the east coast of Florida this Friday, it will be carrying more than just Canada's 9th satellite, Anik-B.

For with the new Anik will ride the hopes of many Canadian medical personnel, educators, broadcasters, native peoples' organizations and others working with the federal Department of Communications (DOC). They'll be participating in a \$36 million program to use a unique feature of the new Telesat Canada spacecraft to bring a variety of promising new social uses of satellite communications out of their current experimental stage and closer to everyday reality. Projects are to begin in late March.

One of the most promising new satellite applications likely to be furthered by DOC's Anik-B Communications Program is direct, satellite-to-home broadcasting. The department plans to conduct trials and demonstrations of a variety of small satellite ground stations, known as "TVRO" (television receive-only) terminals, produced in Canadian industry.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

(more)

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



This can be done because Anik-B is a dual-band satellite -- with 12 channels in the conventional 4 and 6 Gigahertz microwave bands, for service in Telesat's existing commercial satellite communications system --- and six in the new 14 and 12 GHz frequency bands, first used by Canada's advanced technology HERMES satellite.

The department is leasing this high-frequency capacity of Anik-B for a two-year series of carefully-selected pilot projects in the fields of health care, education, community communications, TV program distribution, provision of government services, remote sensing, data communications, propagation measurements, and geophysical science. The economic and social benefits to Canada of new communications services provided by commercial satellites operating at 14/12 GHz, beginning with Anik-C in 1981, will be measured in the hundreds of millions of dollars.

These projects (see attached table) are sponsored by a variety of both federal and provincial government departments and agencies from BC to Newfoundland, with telecommunications common carriers, (such as the Trans-Canada Telephone System and Telesat itself) universities and native groups also participating.

At least 17 groups or agencies will be involved in these advanced communications pilot projects, aimed at refining new services, further examining the viability of others and making both new and potential users of satellite services more experienced in or aware of their most effective use.

Two-year leasing of the 14/12 GHz channels, with an option for three more, is costing DOC \$32 million, including launch and extra operating costs attributable to the government program. Earth station conversion, administration and other departmental costs will run to another \$4 million.

(more)

In keeping with its fundamental objective of acting as a catalyst in the proposal, trial use, refinement, and eventual commercial introduction of new social uses of satellites, the department is helping project leaders plan, conduct and conclude their activities.

Through the \$60 million Canadian-designed and built HERMES communications technology satellite --- the world's most powerful --- launched by NASA from the same Kennedy Space Centre pad Jan. 17, 1976, Canada is a world pioneer in such uses of advanced technology satellites as testing methods of improving health care and medical education in remote areas, tele-teaching by satellite, putting native people in better touch with each-other and proving that direct-to-home satellite broadcasting to tiny terminals is a technological reality.

The HERMES program is now entering a new six-month phase of intensive TV experiments, after which it will wind down as the satellite ages. The U.S., which has shared use of HERMES, is also drawing its program with the spacecraft to a close. HERMES has permitted a large number of users in both countries to conduct short experiments in many areas. The more promising applications demonstrated have been selected for inclusion in the all-Canadian Anik-B program. This new program will provide users with much longer periods of satellite time than was possible with HERMES, which was shared 50-50 with the U.S.

Recent advances in technology and possible mass production techniques for DBS (Direct Broadcasting Satellite) hardware are bringing Canadians close to the day when they will be able to receive high-quality TV service directly from a satellite --- regardless of where they may live, or how far from a

(more)

conventional broadcast transmitter or cable TV system. The department is now negotiating possible arrangements with Canadian companies for field-testing such terminals with Anik-B.

Such tests would answer questions about optimum design, packaging and field-handling, repeatability and survivability of various designs.

- 30 -

Ref: Mike Bryan, media relations officer

(613) 995-8185

W.E. Threinen,

Communications Satellite Programs,

(613) 593-7471



Anik-B Communications Program  
(TBD = To be determined)

SUBJECT AREA	GROUPS INVOLVED	PROPOSED START DATES	DESCRIPTION OR TRIAL SERVICES	TERMINAL LOCATIONS	CONTACT
TV Program Distribution	Participating groups, trial services, locations etc. being developed.	TBD	Demonstrations of semi-direct satellite broadcasting, using the Anik-B and Hermes satellites, to stimulate Canadian manufacturers to develop a domestic production capability in satellite earth stations for individual reception	numerous - TBD	J.M. Bryan DOC (613) 995-8185
Community Communications	Alberta Native Communications Society, provincial universities and other agencies.	Fall, 1979	Improved TV, audio teleconferencing and educational links amongst remote communities. Project includes a telehealth component. Programming centres in Edmonton to be connected with several remote communities for educational and community services employing one-way TV with two-way voice. Service for both native and non-native people.	Edmonton and 6 remote locations, TBD	Dr. M. Richmond (403) 437-0580
Community Communications	Inuit Tapirisat of Canada	Fall, 1980	Interactive communications and teleconferencing links to meet the special needs of Inuit communities. Support from Dept. of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Native people themselves to determine "program" content	One principal and five community locations, TBD, in Northern Quebec.	Lindsay Green (613) 238-8181
Community Communications	Taqramuit Nipingat Inc.	Fall, 1980	Project to establish a video and telephony network linking four Inuit communities in Northern Quebec	One principal and four community sites, TBD, in Northern Quebec.	P. Lumsden, (613) 722-0912

SUBJECT AREA	GROUPS INVOLVED	PROPOSED START DATES	DESCRIPTION OF TRIAL SERVICES	TERMINAL LOCATIONS	CONTACT
Tele-education	British Columbia Ministry of Education	Fall, 1979	An interactive educational satellite communications network to link a central studio in Burnaby with six other BC communities, for the purpose of improving access to academic, technical/vocational, adult education and continuing education programs. Head agency involved, British Columbia Open Learning Institute. Emphasis on community college involvement.	Burnaby and 6 other locations, TBD	John Bottomley (604) 872-0245
Tele-education	Ontario Educational Communications Authority	Spring, 1979	OECA plans trial extension of its video network via Anik-B, to further refine delivery of educational programming to remote Ontario communities.	Marathon and other locations	Peter Bowers (416) 484-2621
Tele-education	Ministry of Education of Quebec	Spring, 1979	Delivery of educational material to both native and non-native people in remote regions of Northern Quebec	Montreal, LG-2 and other sites TBD	Louis Leclerc, Quebec Ministry of Communications, (418) 643-1903
Tele-education Tele-health	Université de Montréal	Spring, 1979	Audio and video teleconferencing involving both the health care and education fields in an extension of services from central points - such as Montreal - to remote regions.	Montreal and LG-2	Louis Leclerc, (418) 643-1903
Tele-health	Memorial University of Newfoundland	Summer, 1980	Continuation of a program thrust begun with Hermes, in the provision of interactive satellite communications between a health education centre (St. John's) and various remote communities in Newfoundland and Labrador, for educational health programs, upgrading of professionals etc.	St. John's and other locations TBD	Judy Roberts (709) 737-6654

SUBJECT AREA	GROUPS INVOLVED	DATES	DESCRIPTION OF TRIAL SERVICES	LOCATIONS	CONTACT
Upgrading Decentralized Government Telecommunications Services.	Government of Ontario: Ministry of Government Services	Spring, 1979	Assessment of operational and economic aspects of video teleconferencing service, with related capabilities to meet the general information transfer requirements of several provincial ministries for voice, facsimile, data, teletype and video transmissions.	Toronto, Thunder Bay and other locations TBD	D.I. Towers, Ministry of Government Services, (416) 965-0175.
<u>ADVANCED TECHNOLOGY PROJECTS</u>					
Data Communications	Telesat Canada & The Trans-Canada Telephone System (TCTS)	Summer, 1980	Field trials involving new earth stations (and associated equipment) of the type to be used with the Anik-C satellites.	Toronto, Montreal	R.M. Lester, Telesat Canada (613) 746-5920 D.A. Smith, TCTS (613) 239-4611
Advanced Satellite Communications Techniques	Department of Communications, Communications Research Centre	Fall, 1980	Operational features of a medium-capacity Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) satellite communications system will be tested in this project, which could lead to new hardware development in Canada	4 TBD	Dr. P. Nuspl (613) 596-9441
Satellite-linked Radio Interferometry for Geophysical Studies	University of Toronto and others	Summer, 1979	University of Toronto, York University, the federal Energy, Mines and Resources Dept., NRC and the U.S. Naval Research Laboratory are all involved in this project, which will establish a pre-operational long base line interferometer for geophysical studies.	Lake Traverse, Ont.; Penticton, B.C.; Washington, D.C.	Dr. Y.L. Yen (416) 978-8756

SUBJECT AREA	GROUPS INVOLVED	PROPOSED START DATES	DESCRIPTION OF TRIAL SERVICES	TERMINAL LOCATIONS	CONTACT
Remote Sensing	Canada Centre for Remote Sensing (CCRS)	Summer, 1980	Delivery of remote sensing imagery analysis capability, now Ottawa-based, to distant users in Newfoundland, Edmonton and perhaps elsewhere.	Ottawa, Edmonton	T. Butlin (613) 993-0121
Propagation Studies	Telesat Canada	Spring, 1980	Integration of a prototype adaptive polarization tracking system in an experimental earth station.  Involves development of new hardware in Canada for potential use with Anik-C terminals,	Fredericton, N.B.	R.M. Lester (613) 746-5920

CAI  
CPS  
-N26

Government Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CB CHANNEL 9 FOR EMERGENCY USE ONLY

OTTAWA, December 21, 1978 -- The Department of Communications advises that General Radio Service Channel 9 may now be used for radiocommunications that concern only the immediate protection of lives or property. According to previous regulation, channel 9 could be used for both emergency and general calls.

During the past year, GRS users and organizations have asked that channel 9 be used for emergency communications only. As a result, the Department published in The Canada Gazette Part II, Vol. 112, No. 23 an amendment to the General Radio Regulations, Part II.

Because of the change, another channel will have to be used as a calling channel. The Department published a Notice in November 18 Canada Gazette asking for comments on the need for or the desirability of designating channel 11 as the new calling channel. A decision concerning this designation will be made later.

-30-

For information: Gilles Bourassa  
(613) 995-8185



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



CAI  
248  
-N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

JAN 15 1979

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

## ECONOMIST CARL BEIGIE JOINS COMMITTEE ON IMPLICATIONS OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS

OTTAWA, January 4, 1979 -- Prominent economist Carl E. Beigie, of Montreal, joins the Consultative Committee on the Implications of Telecommunications for Canadian Sovereignty, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé today announced.

Mr. Beigie, 38, is president of the non-profit C.D. Howe Research Institute and a part-time associate professor in McGill University's faculty of management. He joined the institute as its executive director in 1971 and became president one year ago. Mr. Beigie is the author of several studies in the field of communications including presentations to the CRTC at its recent hearings on interconnection.

The eight-member committee was appointed at the end of November to advise Madame Sauvé on a strategy for the restructuring of the Canadian telecommunications system to help safeguard Canada's sovereignty, take best advantage of new and converging technologies, and meet industrial objectives and other national goals. Because of other commitments, Mr. Beigie has only now been able to accept the invitation to serve on the committee.

The committee's report, due by the end of February, is expected to generate constructive public debate on the future of telecommunications in Canada.

- 30 -

(See attachment)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Consultative Committee on the Implications of Telecommunications  
for Canadian Sovereignty

---

Membership

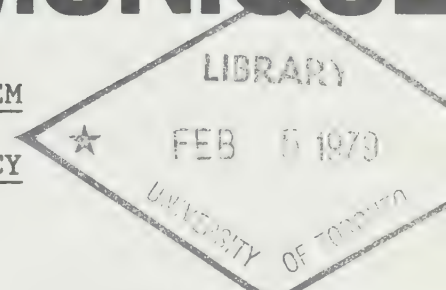
J.V. Clyne	Chairman
Guy Fournier	Vice-Chairman
Lloyd R. Shaw	
Robert Fulford	
Beland H. Honderich	
Alphonse Ouimet	
Dianne Narvik	
Carl Beigie	
Henry Hindley	Secretary
Pierre Billon	Associate Secretary



CAI  
C 08  
-N 26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## NEW CANADIAN TECHNOLOGY IN MOBILE DATA SYSTEM GIVES VANCOUVER POLICE BIG EDGE IN EFFICIENCY



Vancouver, B.C.----(Jan. 29, 1979)----An advanced mobile radio data system (MRDS), the product of a \$2.5 million federal project to develop and exploit new Canadian electronics technology, was officially turned over to city police here today by the Hon. Ray J. Perrault, leader of the government in the Senate, on behalf of Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé.

Funded in large part by the Department of Communications (DOC), the Vancouver Police MRDS was developed as a model system under agreements among DOC, the RCMP and the City of Vancouver. It's the first of its kind in Canada, putting computer power literally at the fingertips of patrol car officers to enhance their efficiency and effectiveness.

The MRDS program, announced Nov. 19, 1974, began with an agreement between DOC and the federal police force to cooperate in the design, development and production of a modular system to satisfy the special requirements of major Canadian police forces for tactical computer/communications to and from field units. DOC wanted to develop new technology to stimulate Canadian industry, after market studies pinpointed likely growing demand for digital mobile data systems.

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Canadian Police Services component of the RCMP entered the project to answer requests from other major police forces that it provide design specifications for integrated MRD systems for ready incorporation into local computer-aided dispatch (CAD) systems, as well as for interface with the Canadian Police Information Centre (CPIC), a national police service providing on-line sharing of continuously updated records on stolen cars, wanted persons and similar police operational information.

In the market for such a system, Vancouver police became involved in 1976, ultimately spending \$280,000 for the hardware (including mobile data and radio packages and base station mini-computers) required to make the prototype DOC-RCMP system operational. Through industrial contracts, the federal government provided general and detailed system design, systems engineering, software, specialized hardware and related, non-hardware support.

"As a result of this co-operation, involving two quite different federal agencies and this city, Vancouver now leads the country in the sophistication of its police communications," said Sen. Perrault, as he turned the system over to Vancouver Police Chief Don Winterton.

"What is particularly satisfying about it is that we have achieved this with a commercially-exploitable new Canadian technology -- technology which, because it seems to be the best available anywhere, now stands an excellent chance of bringing this country both a bigger share of our own mobile radio market and benefits from export sales."

Principal contractor for the new system was the Vancouver based high-technology firm of MacDonald, Dettwiler Associates Ltd. A spin-off Canadian company has been launched to market complete subsystems modelled after the

(more)

Vancouver police system, under technology licensing agreements with the federal government. Foreign orders totalling over \$ 240,000 have already been received.

A gathering at police headquarters attended by senior RCMP and other police officers, local officials and representatives of the contractor marked the official inauguration of the system by Sen. Perrault.

Now fully operational in up to 10 cruisers patrolling downtown Vancouver (one of four police "districts" in the city), the MRDS is expected to go city-wide within a year, following final city and CPIC studies to confirm the validity of its design and evaluate human factors involved.

- 30 -

Ref: J.M. Bryan

(613) 995-8185, headquarters, Ottawa

(ADDITIONAL INFORMATION FOLLOWS)

## MOBILE RADIO DATA SYSTEMS

The Vancouver Police Department's federally-developed mobile radio data system is the first operational system of its kind in Canada, in the vanguard of new technologies and systems that are revolutionizing police tactical communications.

Patrol cars in the Vancouver system have small, ruggedized data entry, retrieval and display packages mounted on vehicle transmission humps. These packages have full alpha-numeric keyboards, special function keys (including some that can automatically advise a base station computer of service status) and 9"-by-3" display screens for messages of up to six lines, each consisting of a maximum of 40 characters.

Such systems thus eliminate the time-consuming necessity of police radio dispatchers having to serve as middlemen for voice enquiries directed to data bases from field units enquiring about such matters as stolen cars or wanted persons.

Voice channels used by most major Canadian police forces can frequently be so congested with peak-hour radio traffic that officers have to figuratively "stand in line" to get on the air -- sometimes even in life-threatening emergencies.

Because routine matters can now be dealt with via the mobile data system, Vancouver's dispatching channels will now be much less congested, while field officers will be free to make as much use of instant computer power as they wish.

The system makes the patrol car officer more efficient, giving him direct, private and near-instant access to needed information and ending much unauthorized eavesdropping on police communications.

(more)

There is another advantage inherent in the digital transmission used by the system: It conserves radio frequency spectrum.

The spectrum, a precious natural resource, is not infinite. Demand for frequencies is so great that saturation points have almost been reached in densely-populated regions of Canada. Either new frequencies will have to be found --- taken away from other radio services, such as television --- or more efficient means of using existing frequencies, such as MRDS systems, developed and more widely used.

- 30 -

PROJECT PARTICIPANTS:

Department of Communications,  
Communications Research Centre

Royal Canadian Mounted Police,  
Canadian Police Services

City of Vancouver,  
Vancouver Police Department

Principal Contractor:

MacDonald, Dettwiler Associates Ltd.

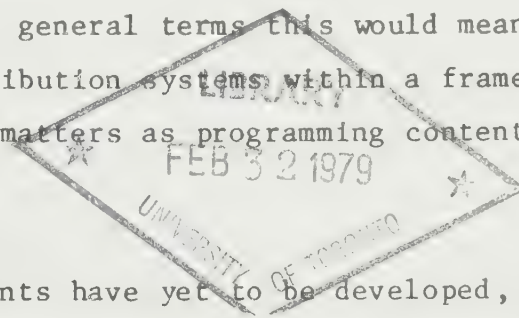
CAI  
Cof  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## STATEMENT BY MINISTER OF COMMUNICATIONS JEANNE SAUVÉ ON PROPOSED CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS WITH RESPECT TO CABLE DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

OTTAWA, February 13, 1979 -- Commenting on the release today by the Canadian Intergovernmental Conference Secretariat of the proposed constitutional revision for cable distribution systems, Madame Sauvé indicated that she was pleased that the draft amendment had received such broad acceptance by First Ministers at last week's conference. "The proposal," she said, "not only accommodates provincial interests but ensures that national concerns are respected, particularly with respect to the protection and continued orderly development of the Canadian broadcasting system."

Under the proposal, the two levels of governments would have concurrent authority over cable distribution systems and each would have paramountcy in areas of their primary interest. In general terms this would mean that the provinces would regulate cable distribution systems within a framework of federal legislation related to such matters as programming content and broadcasting.



While detailed working arrangements have yet to be developed, it is envisaged that it would be provincial responsibility to license cable systems within a province and to license them or other entities to provide programming services, including those of a community or instructional nature. Also, the province would be able to regulate intra-provincial telecommunications services provided on the cable system such as meter reading, fire alarm surveillance systems, etc.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



For its part, the federal government would make general regulations to be observed in the introduction and provision of programming services. Such regulations would govern, for example, signal carriage priorities, commercial advertising, foreign signal carriage, allocation of revenues to Canadian programming.

This sharing of powers was developed in response to the desires of several provinces to obtain direct jurisdiction over those aspects of cable distribution systems that were local in nature. Madame Sauvé noted that the federal government has always been responsive to these requests and ready to consider realistic proposals for a provincial responsibility. As early as 1975, when the federal government published its "Grey Paper" proposals for communications policy, sharing of authority was raised as a possibility. Provision for delegation subsequently emerged as a feature of the new telecommunication legislation, currently before Parliament as Bill C-16. These new proposals derive from similar thinking, although now expressed in constitutional terms.

The retention of federal jurisdiction within the framework of a shared jurisdiction is vitally important for a number of reasons. As Madame Sauvé noted during the First Ministers' Conference, cable may become a principal means for distributing television programs directly to many Canadian homes in the future. Insofar as closed-circuit delivery may replace over-the-air reception in some urban settings, it is apparent that the federal government should continue to exercise an effective regulatory function over "broadcast services", regardless of the technical changes that may take place in the way the service is made available to the public. It is also important that the federal government be able to exercise an appropriate influence in the introduction and regulation of new closed-circuit services to the extent that they affect

Canadian broadcasting programs and services. By ensuring federal authority in these areas, the proposal allows the federal government to protect and develop the broadcasting system and to pursue national goals in the area of Canadian content.

Federal authority over technical standards is also contained in the proposal. This will ensure, for example, that all Canadians will be able to use their TV sets and other terminal equipment on any cable system anywhere in the country. Common technical standards will also ensure that cable distribution systems develop in a compatible manner as a part of the overall Canadian telecommunications infrastructure as well as contribute to the orderly development of a market for the electronics manufacturers.

Madame Sauvé noted the concerns expressed by the broadcasting industry and in particular by the Canadian Cable Television Association, over the possibility of excessive regulation and burdensome regulatory machinery. "The concern is legitimate. This is an area which will require careful consideration and ingenuity, to arrive at regulatory mechanisms which do not in any way stunt the growth of industry or hamper the introduction of new services. I am sure that given the will and spirit of federal-provincial co-operation, a system can be devised to provide for effective regulation of cable in Canada," the Minister said. She went on to propose that there should be full discussion of these concerns between governments and cable industry representatives throughout the country.

In response to queries as to the future of the proposal, Madame Sauvé noted that its disposition in the context of the overall constitutional review will undoubtedly be the subject of further discussion by the Continuing Committee of Ministers.

DRAFT FOR DISCUSSION

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Cable<br>Distribution   | 1. In each province the legislature may make laws in relation to cable distribution within the province, including the reception and redistribution of broadcast signals; Parliament may also make laws in relation thereto for each of the provinces.  |
| Relationships<br>between laws<br>of the<br>provinces and<br>laws of<br>Parliament | 2. Any law enacted by the legislature of a province pursuant to section 1 shall prevail to the extent of the inconsistency over any law of Parliament enacted thereunder except in relation to Canadian content, Canadian broadcast programs and services, and technical standards, in which case any law of Parliament shall prevail to the extent of the inconsistency. |
| Consultations   | 3. The Government of Canada shall consult the government of the province concerned before Parliament makes a law in relation to cable distribution within that province pursuant to section 1.  |
| Telecommuni-<br>cations<br>undertakings   | 4. Telecommunications undertakings coming under jurisdiction of Parliament as well as those coming under the jurisdiction of the legislation of a province and engaging in activities coming under section 1 other than as carriers shall be subject, in so far as such activities are concerned, to the laws enacted under section 1.                                    |
| Powers<br>continued   | 5. Except where otherwise expressly provided in sections 1 to 4, nothing therein shall derogate from the legislative powers that Parliament and the legislatures of the provinces had immediately before the coming into force of these sections.   |

## Appendix

A recent chronology of events leading to the current proposals:

October 31, 1978  
(Ottawa)

Responding to provincial initiatives, the Prime Minister proposed 'communications' as one of the seven items for early and urgent attention. He recognized that "it will likely be difficult in the months which lie immediately ahead to reach final conclusions on how a new constitutional provision should look in the overall" but added that "there may be some matters within the field on which we could reach early agreement..."

December 14, 1978  
(Toronto)

Marc Lalonde, Minister of Intergovernmental Affairs, outlined possibilities and options for constitutional change in regard to telecommunications carriers and cable distribution (and certain administrative arrangements for radio spectrum management and broadcasting). He acknowledged it would be difficult to get "agreement on change in all of these fields ... but it will be important by February to show movement, to go part way" although he doubted whether we could do it "all" by February.

December 21  
January 5, 1979  
(Regina)

At the request of Ministers, Saskatchewan and federal officials examined possibilities in the four areas noted above. As regards cable distribution systems in particular, their report outlined a framework for concurrent jurisdiction, with provincial paramountcy over some aspects and federal over others. There was, however, no agreement as to the precise parameters of these paramount powers.

January 12, 1979  
(Ottawa)

In response to provincial requests, federal officials agreed to prepare a draft proposal in constitutional language on cable.

January 22, 23, 1979  
(Vancouver)

The federal government presented the draft proposal on cable. Most provinces accepted the principle of concurrent jurisdiction over cable. Discussions centered on whether federal jurisdiction should extend to closed-circuit systems and on the extent of the powers reserved to the federal government.

February 5-6, 1979  
(Ottawa)

A revised proposal obtained broad provincial support but Quebec reserved its position.

February 13, 1979  
(Ottawa)

Proposal made public by CICS.



CA1  
C68  
-N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## NEW RADIO LICENCE FEE SCHEDULE

OTTAWA, February 15, 1979 -- A new radio licence fee schedule for non-broadcasting stations will be implemented on April 1, 1979, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  announced today.

Mme Sauv  said that the new schedule introduces the concept of variable fees which will be more representative of the size and complexity of the communication system used by the licensee. This new schedule of fees for radio licences will balance revenues with the costs of radio spectrum management. This is in accordance with the principle that the cost of licensing radio stations should be borne by the licensees and not by taxpayers generally.

Mme Sauv  emphasized that the more than one million General Radio Service (GRS or CB) and Amateur licences will not be affected by the fee revision and that fees for these licences will remain unchanged. These represent more than 70 per cent of radio station licences currently in force.

Commenting on some specifics, Mme Sauv  said the licence fee will depend in part on the number of frequencies assigned to the radio station, as well as take into account the location of the actual radio station in the case of certain categories of stations. The Department has defined 23 metropolitan areas based on the 1976 Statistics Canada census. In these areas, spectrum is now or will be congested in the near future. For stations located in these



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

... 2



areas, the licence fees will be higher than for those located outside of these areas.

Since fiscal year 1971-72, the revenues from spectrum-related activities have been insufficient to cover the costs of spectrum management. The Department, however, expects to recover the costs of its spectrum management activities with the introduction of the new schedule.

The Minister pointed out that all radio services will not be affected in the same way by the new fee schedule. The following are examples of some of the changes that will occur:

-- In the Land Mobile Service, fees for mobile stations will individually increase from \$10 to \$15. For base stations, the fee will be a function of the number of transmit and receive frequencies as well as the location of the station. In metropolitan areas, the fee will be \$40 for a system to which one transmit and one receive frequency has been assigned (\$20 per frequency). Under the previous schedule, the fee was \$26 regardless of the number of assigned frequencies. In a non-metropolitan area the fee will be \$10 per transmit or receive assigned frequency with a minimum fee of \$26 per station.

-- Private space and earth stations will now be subject to a variable fee.

-- Fees for radio facilities operated by major public telecommunications carriers will increase substantially; while, for smaller public carriers, they will remain the same or decrease.

The new radio licence fee schedule and amendments to the General Radio Regulations were published in the Canada Gazette Part II, Vol. 113, No. 03 , on Wednesday, February 14th, 1979.

For Information: Dr. John deMercado or W.W. Scott  
(613) 996-2453 (613) 992-8061

CAI  
CFS  
- N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## FEDERAL GOVERNMENT AND COMMON CARRIERS INITIATE \$6.1 MILLION FIBRE-OPTICS TRIAL

OTTAWA, February 20, 1979 -- Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  and Don Cruickshank, president of the Canadian Telecommunications Carriers Association (CTCA), today signed an agreement for a joint \$6.1 million field trial of fibre-optics technology, to take place in the Manitoba town of Elie.

It's believed to be the first such rural test of this new technology anywhere in the world.

The five-year program, first proposed by the Manitoba Telephone System (MTS), will offer residents of up to 150 homes new benefits of single-party telephone service, multi-channel TV and FM radio and a variety of new home services -- all delivered via hair-thin optical fibres, glass strands that can carry many times more information than conventional copper cables.

The program promises to keep Canada in the forefront of one of the key technologies in the rapidly-advancing field of telecommunications.

The federal government and CTCA are sharing program costs, with the bulk of the work -- installation of basic switching and transmission facilities -- being carried out under a contract to Northern Telecom Ltd, which is in the final negotiation phase. Northern is itself expected to contribute more than \$600,000 to the program.



... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Objectives of the Elie trial are to assess the feasibility of fibre-optics to improve generally deficient rural communications services, check out the technology under real environmental and operating conditions and provide government and industry with valuable technical, economic, market and systems knowledge needed for future regulatory, research, marketing and other decisions.

While the Elie project entails evaluation of one form of single, integrated distribution system for all types of communications entering the home, the Minister emphasized that no conclusions should be drawn as to the future direction of federal government policy on institutional integration of distribution plant.

One of the new services due to be tried out during the program will be the department of communications' two-way TV system -- TELIDON, which can provide owners of inexpensively-modified TV sets connected to simple telephone-type touch pads with access to a variety of information "pages" from data banks.

Installation of the basic system in and around Elie is expected to take about two years, with first services offered to home participants around the end of 1980 or early 1981.

The agreement signed in Madame Sauvé's office today runs to December 31, 1983. The trial is expected to be largely complete by about four years from now.

The program will be managed by a board which includes senior officials of the department, CTCA and MTS. The Crown will own any resulting inventions and technical information, but CTCA members (Canada's major telecommunications common carriers) will have the right to their royalty-free use.

The Elie fibre-optics field trial complements DOC's rural communications program, established in 1976 to help find, evaluate and promote new ways of improving telecommunications services of all types in rural Canada.

Ref: J.M. Bryan, Media Relations Officer  
(613) 995-8185

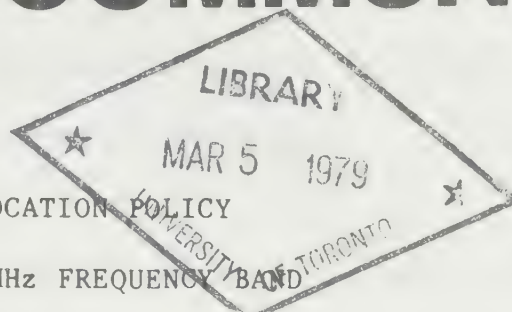
J.R. Marchand, Manager  
Rural Communications Program  
(613) 593-6072



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

SPECTRUM ALLOCATION POLICY

FOR THE 406-960 MHz FREQUENCY BAND



OTTAWA, February 23, 1979 -- Changes in Canadian spectrum allocations in the 406-960 Megahertz (MHz) frequency band have been made to accommodate the growing requirements of a number of radio services including mobile, broadcasting, and amateur.

In announcing the new policy, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  said there have been problems of congestion in the 406-960 MHz frequency band which is now used for a variety of services, including UHF TV broadcasting, amateur radio and mobile (two-way radio communication for industry, police, taxis and others).

Mme Sauv  said that the department will adopt new, more efficient techniques for allotting television channels, to enable forecast UHF TV requirements to be satisfied within channels 14 to 69. This makes possible the

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



the reallocation of the 806-890 MHz band to the mobile service.

Other changes will see the 420-430 MHz band reallocated from radiolocation and amateur radio to the mobile and fixed services. Mobile and fixed services are added to the existing radio-astronomy allocation in the 406.1-410 MHz band, while the amateur service is added to the 902-928 MHz band.

The minister said licensing in the 806-890 MHz band would not be undertaken until detailed arrangements had been finalized, including discussions with U.S. authorities, and until the band had been fully planned with a view to encouraging use of state-of-the-art technology to ensure spectrum efficiency.

The minister invited interested parties to comment on such questions as the type of mobile services required in the 806-890 MHz band, and the institutional arrangements, suballocations and system configurations needed to implement these services.

The announcement culminates a process of public consultation that began in August 1976 with the release of a background paper entitled "Spectrum Allocation in the 406-960 MHz Frequency Band".

Details of the new allocations, and the major considerations behind the new policy are outlined in the publication "Spectrum Allocation Policy in the 406 to 960 MHz Frequency Band". Copies of this paper are available from the Information Services, Department of Communications, Ottawa K1A 0C8 or from DOC

regional offices in Vancouver (phone 604-666-8530), Montreal (phone 514-283-5065), Moncton (phone 506-858-2094), Winnipeg (phone 204-949-4391), and Toronto (phone 416-966-8215).

Reference: Information Services, Ottawa - Michael Bryan  
(613) 995-8185

Spectrum and Radio Systems Policy - Bob Jones  
(613) 996-1491

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Broadcasters, Cable TV Licensees and Common Carriers

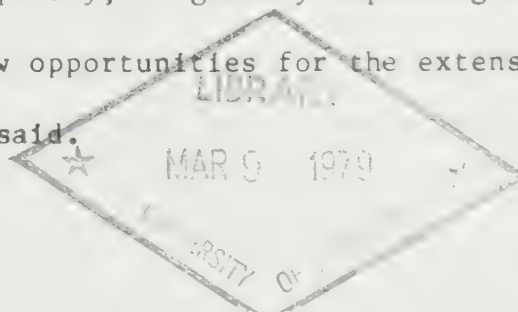
### May Now Own and Operate Satellite Earth Stations

OTTAWA, February 27, 1979 — Greater choice of TV programming and fuller access to other communications services carried on Canadian satellites will now be possible through a new earth station licensing policy announced today by federal Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv .

Canada's broadcasters, cable TV companies and telecommunications common carriers will be permitted to own and operate television receive-only terminals under the new policy.

The common carriers may also apply for licences for transmit/receive stations to operate with Canada's new, higher frequency Anik C satellite system, scheduled for service in 1981.

"I am confident that the new policy, in greatly improving access to satellite service, will provide new opportunities for the extension of TV programming in Canada," Mme Sauv  said.



(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The minister said the policy could be particularly advantageous in remote and rural areas, where community groups that obtain broadcasting licences could now apply for licences for receive-only earth stations.

Licences will only be issued for authorized reception of program-carrying signals originating within Canada and transmitted by Canadian satellites. Applicants will need the approval of the originators of such signals as well as CRTC authorizations for their reception and use.

Mme Sauvé issued a call for co-operation and innovative thinking with respect to new services that could be carried on Canadian satellites:

"Extension of ownership -- made possible through this policy -- opens the way to extension of basic services and choice in TV programming for all Canadians. I understand some initiatives are already being discussed by broadcasters, cable television companies and the telecommunications carriers. My department will do all it can to encourage these developments."

The minister said the new policy would lead to fuller use of Canadian satellites, and would increase opportunities for Canadian manufacturers who are now at the forefront of earth station technology.

Until now, only Telesat Canada has been issued operational satellite earth station licences.

(more)

The decision to liberalize this policy follows an extensive review launched by the minister Nov. 3, 1977. At that time, she said she was anxious to encourage fullest possible use of Canadian satellites and ordered the review to identify cases where non-Telesat ownership of earth stations could be in the public interest. During the review, 49 briefs were received from a wide range of interested parties. Madame Sauvé noted that many of the briefs suggested measures for maintaining a high level of Canadian industrial participation in the provision of earth stations.

"I have asked my department to meet with representatives of the manufacturing industry and the broadcasting, cable and carrier industries to explore how the anticipated demand for new earth stations can best be met from Canadian sources."

Applications for earth station licences will have to be made in accordance with Radio Standards Procedure (RSP) 114, which details information required, licence terms and conditions.

Copies of the minister's statement and a report on the review, titled "Satellite earth station licensing", are available by calling or writing:

Department of Communications  
Information Services  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0C8  
Tel: (613) 995-8185

- 30 -

Ref: J.M. Bryan  
(613) 995-8185

R.M. Bennett  
(613) 996-2101

(MINISTER'S STATEMENT  
ATTACHED)

STATEMENT BY  
MINISTER OF COMMUNICATIONS  
JEANNE SAUVÉ  
ON THE  
NEW POLICY  
FOR  
LICENSING  
SATELLITE EARTH STATIONS

FEBRUARY 27, 1979



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



## LICENSING OF SATELLITE EARTH STATIONS

Following a thorough review of the situation by my Department, I have announced a new policy for the licensing of satellite earth stations. Under the new policy, my Department will now consider licence applications from broadcasting undertakings and terrestrial telecommunication carriers for certain types of earth stations. In my view, this step should result in greater opportunity for the public to benefit from telecommunication services by satellite.

The new policy results from a review which was given formal notice in the 1977 December 10 edition of the Canada Gazette, Part I, and which I announced on 1977 December 12. It followed my 1977 November 3 statement that there would be a re-examination of the policy whereby Telesat owned all of the earth stations in its system, with the objective of encouraging the fullest access to new satellite services.

It will now be possible for broadcasting undertakings and telecommunication carriers to apply for radio licences for television receive-only earth stations (TVRO) for signals transmitted by Canadian satellites. Applicants will, however, have to meet a number of conditions including approval of the originator of the program signal which is transmitted by Telesat Canada and receipt of all required authorizations for the use of the signals from the CRTC.

The new policy will also permit recognized telecommunication carriers to apply for licences to operate earth stations in conjunction with Telesat's new 12/14 GHz Anik system scheduled for service in 1981.

In announcing this aspect of the policy, I have decided against a similar change for the existing 4/6 GHz system as there was little evidence that such a change would significantly increase carrier utilization of those satellites or result in improved service to subscribers. It is also recognized that this nationwide system was already well established under full Telesat ownership and management. It would, however, be reasonable to expect that the policy with respect to terrestrial carrier ownership of 4/6 GHz earth stations could be reviewed later, in the light of experience gained with licensing of 12/14 GHz earth stations.

Looking into the future, it would appear that the planned 12/14 GHz ANIK system will offer additional service opportunities which could be better exploited by telecommunication carriers if they could own earth stations.

I want to emphasize that the policy change is not in any way to discourage Telesat ownership of earth stations or to affect the existing arrangements between Telesat and the other TCTS members which provides for such ownership. At the same time, the policy change will provide flexibility to accommodate future arrangements and planning of the TCTS members, as well as those of non-TCTS telecommunication carriers.

No policy changes are being made with respect to the licensing of persons other than broadcasting undertakings or telecommunication carriers, with the exception of one special situation. I have decided to accept licence applications on a

case-by-case basis, from either an appropriate telecommunication carrier or a user, for any earth station temporarily operating in remote offshore locations. In these limited situations, licences for stations providing telecommunication services via the Canadian satellite system would only be issued upon satisfactory demonstration that a connecting agreement has been arranged with an appropriate Canadian telecommunication carrier. The TVRO portion of this type of service will be subject to the conditions previously noted for that type of earth station.

Throughout the review process, the stimulus which privately-owned TVRO earth stations would provide to utilization of the Anik satellites has been a major consideration. It was recognized that a policy permitting wider ownership would not, in itself, lead to an adequate source of signals and to the fullest use of satellites to the benefit of Canadians. Because U.S. satellites now carry a significant number of such signals and that number is likely to increase, considerable interest has been expressed in the reception in Canada of program signals from U.S. satellites. However, I would emphasize that the new policy retains the principle of not granting licences to earth stations for the reception of signals from U.S. satellites. It is my hope that the announcement of this policy will contribute to a fruitful discussion among all the parties now considering how to provide a greater choice of Canadian programming transmitted via Anik satellites. Officials of my Department will continue to encourage these efforts.

I have observed with great satisfaction that many of the briefs received addressed the implications of any policy change for the Canadian manufacturers of earth stations and contained suggested measures for maintaining a high degree of Canadian participation in the provisioning of earth stations. In view of the importance of this matter, I have asked my Department to meet with representatives

of the manufacturing industry and the broadcasting, cable television and carrier industries to explore the manner in which the forecast procurement of earth stations can best be met by Canadian industry.

Applications for earth station licences will be made in accordance with Radio Standards Procedure RSP-114, Application Procedures for Planned Radio Stations for Space Communication Systems. This document will be available shortly from the Department of Communications and will describe more completely the information to be provided in a licence application, and the terms and conditions under which a licence could be issued. In particular, all those obtaining licences must be prepared to make whatever adjustments and changes become necessary for continued effective system growth.

In conclusion, I expect that applicants for an earth station licence will be expected to co-operate in the good management and operation of the satellite system and concern themselves with the development of Canadian satellite communications facilities on the broadest possible base.

Submissions received in response to the 1977 December 10 Gazette Notice and the reports of two consultants commissioned by the Department are available for public inspection at the Department of Communications Library, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, and at regional offices of the Department in Vancouver, Winnipeg, Toronto, Montreal and Moncton. Copies of the report of the review prepared by the Department will be available from Information Services, Department of Communications, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, and from the same regional offices.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Visual Ear to broaden horizons of deaf and speech-impaired

OTTAWA, March 2, 1979 -- Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  has announced licensing arrangements with the Ontario Mission of the Deaf (OMD) for the manufacture, marketing and distribution of a new device, the Visual Ear, enabling the hearing-impaired and other handicapped people to use the telephone.

The device is a combination keyboard/alphanumeric display unit which is acoustically coupled to the telephone. The Visual Ear is about the size of a hardcover book, weighs about 1 kg including batteries and can be set up in a home, store or even a telephone booth.

By typing out messages, hearing- and speech-impaired people will be able to "talk" to anyone who has a Visual Ear or compatible device. Messages appear electronically on the display unit, much the same way news is spelled out on cable TV sets, with a maximum of 24 characters shown at once.

The Department of Communications, Health and Welfare Canada and Supply and Services Canada have provided \$729,000 to Bell Northern Research for the development of production prototypes.

Under the terms of the licence granted by Canadian Patents and Development Limited, OMD has the right to sub-licence the device. It is expected that the Visual Ear will retail to the deaf for \$300-\$400.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

...2

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information NR # 79-12  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The idea for a lightweight, inexpensive and portable Visual Ear was first developed by the Ontario Mission of the Deaf.

Mme Sauvé said the project, which began in 1977, is an example of a joint federal government/private sector R&D effort which will not only meet an important social need but open up a potentially lucrative commercial field to Canadian industry.

For further information contact: Grace Brickell  
(613) 995-8185



CAI  
CØ8  
- N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, March 5, 1979 -- The federal government has approved recommendations for Canada's participation in and proposals to the World Administrative Radio Conference (WARC), to be held for 10 weeks starting Sept. 24, 1979, in Geneva, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé said today. The WARC will be held by the International Telecommunication Union, the U.N. specialized agency responsible for co-ordinating international telecommunications.

With more than 1,500 representatives from 154 countries expected, this WARC will be one of the largest world conferences ever. WARC's are held periodically to review the international regulations governing the use of radio communications services. Thus, all users of the air waves, from ham radio operators to broadcasters, have a stake in the outcome of the conference.

"Since the spectrum is a valuable, but limited, natural resource," said Mme Sauvé, "and since the demand for telecommunication services using the spectrum is growing, Canada and other nations must ensure that this resource is used in a manner that will ensure that frequencies are available for the development of services in the years ahead."

This will be the first general WARC held since 1959 and there may not be another until the end of this century. The Canadian proposals for this WARC are contained in a 200-page document formulated by an interdepartmental committee after extensive public consultations with federal departments and agencies, the private sector and provincial governments.



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Among the main Canadian proposals are the following:

- that additional spectrum be allocated for mobile communications in the UHF band;
- that the standard AM broadcasting band be extended to provide for additional channels to permit coverage of areas in Canada not at present adequately served;
- that the amount of shortwave spectrum employed for international broadcasting be substantially increased;
- that additional radio spectrum be provided for Canadian and international requirements for radiocommunications by satellites;
- that additional spectrum be provided for the amateur radio service.

"The decisions taken at the 1979 WARC will have a significant impact on Canadian radiocommunications for the remainder of this century," said Mme Sauvé, who also expressed the belief "that it will be possible for the WARC to arrive at solutions which will be compatible with the continued healthy development of Canadian radiocommunication systems."

For further information, contact:

David Wright - (613) 995-8185

Information Services

E.D. DuCharme - (613) 593-7331

International Branch



Background information on  
Canadian participation in the 1979 World  
Administrative Radio Conference (WARC)

The radio spectrum

The radio spectrum is a valuable natural resource which is limited, but unlike non-renewable resources, cannot be used up; however, like an urban traffic artery, it can become congested. With a growing demand in the world for telecommunication services which use the radio spectrum, increasing emphasis is being given to ensuring the efficient utilization of this resource. The radio spectrum is, for international administrative purposes, divided into various frequency bands which are allocated to different types of radiocommunication services such as broadcasting, maritime radio, radar and space communications.

The International Table of Frequency Allocations is approved at general World Administrative Radio Conferences (WARCs) which are held about every 20 years by the International Telecommunication Union ( a United Nations specialized agency with 154 member countries including Canada). The next such WARC will be held in the fall of 1979. At the WARC the current International Table of Frequency Allocations, which was established in 1959, will be revised to better accommodate world telecommunication requirements now and for the remainder of this century. Following the WARC, Canada will publish a revised domestic table of frequency allocations compatible with the results of the WARC.

Canadian participation in WARC's

In recent years, specialized WARC's dealing with particular radiocommunication services have been held. As Canadian radiocommunication requirements have grown, Canada's participation in WARC's has increased in order to protect Canadian interests by ensuring that the international regulations contain adequate provisions for the operation and growth of Canadian radiocommunication systems. Canada is one of only about 20 countries that submit proposals which are used as the basis for revisions; the other member countries of the ITU usually participate in the conferences but do not submit proposals.

For the 1979 WARC, the Canadian preparations began in late 1974 with the formation of the Canadian Interdepartmental Committee (CIC) made up of frequency management experts representing all federal government departments and agencies with interests in radiocommunications (Communications, Transport, Defence, External Affairs, Energy, Mines and Resources, NRC, CRTC, CBC, RCMP, Teleglobe and Telesat). After extensive technical studies and public consultations with the private sector and provincial governments, including the public distribution of two drafts, the CIC has prepared two groups of technical proposals for revising the International Radio Regulations. These proposals are now being submitted to the ITU.

As a result of the public consultations and the interdepartmental participation in the preparations, it is considered that the proposals fully reflect current and future Canadian radiocommunication requirements. Since the WARC will establish new technical standards for radiocommunication equipment, particular care has been taken to ensure that the Canadian proposals are compatible with the current and planned models of radiocommunication equipment manufactured in Canada.

#### Major issues for the 1979 WARC

This section summarizes some of the major concerns for Canada covered in the detailed proposals prepared for submission by Canada to the 1979 WARC:

(i) Radiocommunication issues

(a) Mobile communications and television in the ultra high frequency (UHF) band

Canada will seek a revision of the International Table of Frequency Allocations to reflect the provision of additional spectrum for the mobile communications service that was contained in the new UHF allocation policy announced by Madame Sauvé on February 23, 1979.

(b) Standard AM broadcasting band

The standard AM broadcasting band, which provides the familiar and popular radio service in the urban areas of Canada, can no longer sustain the need for new AM radio stations. Canada is, therefore, proposing that this band be extended to provide for additional channels to permit coverage of Canadian areas not at present adequately served.

(c) Shortwave broadcasting

Canada is also proposing a substantial increase in the amount of shortwave spectrum allocated to broadcasting. Radio Canada International (RCI), Canada's national and international shortwave service, will benefit from this change, particularly from the allocation of a new frequency band near 4 MHz. This new band will permit more effective coverage of northern Quebec, southern Baffin Island and the James Bay area from the RCI transmission station in Sackville, N.B.

(d) Space radiocommunications by satellite

A major issue at the conference will be the allocation to space services of the frequency bands in the vicinity of 12 GHz, used by the new generation of advanced "fixed" (point-to-point radiocommunications) and "direct broadcast" (direct-to-the-home or to small community receivers) satellites.

Both Canada and the USA intend to propose that additional spectrum be allocated to space services in the 12 GHz band. Although there are some technical differences in the Canadian and U.S. proposals, it is anticipated that it will prove possible to resolve these differences through bilateral consultations prior to the Conference.

(e) Amateur radio service

During the public consultations, some submissions noted the important recreational and public service aspects of the hobby of amateur radio. It is, therefore, intended to make several proposals that would greatly improve the regulatory provisions for this service. Canada will be in the forefront of those countries proposing additional spectrum for this service.

One issue in the Canadian proposals is the loss in the Shortwave Broadcasting Service of a small segment of a frequency band near 4 MHz. Currently, the frequency band 3.5-4.0 MHz is allocated to the Amateur Service. It is proposed to reallocate 10 per cent of this band (3.95-4.0 MHz) to the Shortwave Broadcasting Service to obtain improved radio coverage of northern Quebec, southern Baffin Island and the James Bay areas (see paragraph i(c) above). It is considered that this change will not unduly hamper the amateur operations, and that the small loss is more than compensated for by the additional bands proposed for amateurs at higher frequencies.

ii) Other considerations

"A New World Information and Communications Order"

At the WARC the developing countries could raise some issues of a non-technical nature relating to their concerns and the new world information and communications order. However, in the

view of Canadian government officials, the WARC should be able to find ways to accommodate the requirements of the developing countries.

To ensure that all officials are technically prepared for the WARC, the ITU is sponsoring regional seminars in Africa, Asia and Latin America to review the technical bases for the WARC and to discuss other related issues. Canadian officials are participating actively in these seminars.

#### Canadian participation

The ITU is the only UN technical agency to use the administrative conference method to revise its regulations. IMCO (Intergovernmental Civil Aviation Organization) revises its regulations in permanent committees which meet regularly. The revision of the two volumes (more than 1,000 pages ) of the International Radio Regulations during a 10-week conference will be a task of great magnitude. Indeed, with an estimated attendance of 1,500 delegates, this international conference is expected to be one of the largest held in recent times.

It is expected that the work of the Conference will be divided among eight major committees, each of which will establish numerous working groups and sub-working groups.

Participation of specialist technical experts will be required in all of the major radiocommunications specialities to be dealt with at the WARC, such as space, maritime, aeronautical, broadcasting and radionavigation. Since the Canadian regulations must be compatible with the ITU Radio Regulations, it is essential to ensure that none of the decisions of the WARC preclude the implementation of essential national policies and associated

technical standards. As one of the most advanced industrial countries in the telecommunication field, it is essential for Canada to participate actively in this conference which will set the ground rules for the rest of the century and take decisions with important industrial implications.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

HAMILTON, Ontario, March 6, 1979 -- Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé says she welcomes suggestions for new incentives, fiscal or otherwise, that would stimulate the production of Canadian TV programs that Canadians will watch.

She made the comment in remarks to the Sixth Annual Can Pro Awards Festival which is sponsored this year by CHCH-TV of Hamilton. Representatives from 55 private television stations and 25 program distributors are among those attending the program awards festival.

The Minister's comment picks up on remarks she made recently to the effect that the Canadian content quotas for broadcasters are not having their intended effect, which was "to ensure an adequate amount of Canadian programming on each channel which in turn would create a critical mass of creative talent."

- 30 -

For information:

Marc Lessard

Office of the Minister  
(613) 593-5263



NR # 79-14



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



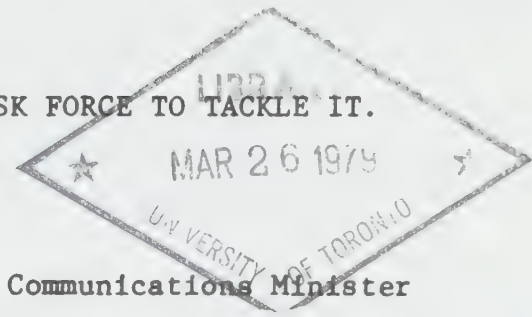
AI  
208  
N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Sex Role Stereotyping:

SAUVE SUGGESTS CRTC CREATE TASK FORCE TO TACKLE IT.



OTTAWA, March 14, 1979 -- Federal Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé has written to the Chairman of the Canadian Radio-Television and Telecommunications Commission, Dr. Pierre Camu, suggesting creation of a task force to develop criteria governing the portrayal of women in sexist stereotypes on radio and television.

Madame Sauvé said the image of women portrayed by the media was an important target of a national federal government action plan aimed at promoting the status of women in society and elimination of discrimination they have traditionally faced.

"Cabinet agrees that it is not up to the government to decide what is permissible in broadcasts and advertisements," the Minister writes.

"Nevertheless, it is of the opinion that the CRTC is the agency that can most appropriately take steps to see that guidelines and standards to encourage the elimination of sex role stereotyping from the media it regulates are formulated by 1980.

...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



"Obviously, the CRTC is free to choose whatever means it feels will be most useful for accomplishing the government's objective," Madame Sauvé adds. She suggests a task force with representatives of broadcasters, industry in general, advertisers and women's groups - in short, a task force similar to one set up to examine advertising aimed at children. She expresses confidence these interests will be glad to co-operate with the CRTC in correcting distortions evident in commercials.

"They will understand that the self-interest of the industries is at issue, in view of the criticism increasingly levelled by enlightened citizens at traditional advertising strategies," says the Minister.

"I would appreciate your studying the media's portrayal of women to ensure that a more objective image of more than half the population of Canada will be conveyed," she concludes.

The minister also told Dr. Camu she herself intends to set up a committee "to monitor radio and television advertising" and inform the public by publishing its findings.

For information: Marc Lessard,  
Office of the Minister  
(613) 593-5263

Mike Bryan,  
DOC Headquarters  
(613) 995-8185

(LETTER ATTACHED)





Minister of Communications

Ministre des Communications

Ottawa K1A 0C8

March 13, 1979

Dr. Pierre Camu  
Chairman  
Canadian Radio-Television and  
Telecommunications Commission  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0N2

Dear Dr. Camu:

As you no doubt know, the Government of Canada has prepared a national action plan aimed at promoting the status of women in society and eliminating the discrimination they have traditionally faced. The image of women as portrayed by the media is an important target of this plan.

Cabinet agrees that it is not up to the government to decide what is permissible in broadcasts and advertisements. Nevertheless, it is of the opinion that the CRTC is the agency that can most appropriately take steps to see that guidelines and standards to encourage the elimination of sex role stereotyping from the media it regulates are formulated by 1980.

Obviously the CRTC is free to choose whatever means it feels will be most useful for accomplishing the Government's objective. Personally, I am in favour of a task force with representatives drawn from the broadcasters, industry in general, advertisers and women's groups - in short, a task force similar to the one that was set up to examine advertising aimed at children; it would be charged with developing criteria governing the portrayal of women in sexist stereotypes for purposes of selling consumer goods and with the advertising of feminine hygiene products.

I would appreciate your studying the media's portrayal of women so as to ensure that a more objective image of more than half of the population of Canada will be conveyed. I have no doubt that representatives of the broadcasting and advertising industries will be glad to co-operate with you in correcting the distortions that are so evident in commercials. They will understand that the self-interest of the industries is at issue, in view of the criticism increasingly levelled by enlightened citizens at traditional advertising strategies.

For my part, I intend to set up a committee to monitor radio and television advertising. I shall ask this committee to publish its findings at regular intervals so that the public will be made aware of this important issue.

Yours sincerely,

*Jeanne Sauvé*

(Mme) Jeanne Sauvé

CA1  
C48  
-N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## The Telecommunications Revolution: Canada Must Play to Win

Ottawa, March 21, 1979 -- The federal Minister of Communications, Jeanne Sauvé, said today that the government is preparing an integrated policy framework for the development and application of new telecommunications and information technology. Speaking to members of the Richelieu Club in Ottawa, Mme Sauvé said these new technologies will benefit Canadians and will have fundamental economic, social and cultural implications.

The Minister pointed out that the information revolution is already under way and Canada is determined to smooth the transition into the new communications order and to maintain world leadership in the telecommunications field.

Canadian supremacy, however, cannot be ensured through unco-ordinated measures. Although Canada possesses important areas of strength, an integrated set of policies must be developed immediately in order to maintain our economic strength, to preserve viable balances of payments, to preserve national sovereignty, and to avoid potential negative impact from the technological upheaval currently being experienced by our society.

The Minister said that about half today's workers can be classified as "information workers" and that the "information" content of Canada's output of goods and services is now between 40 and 50 per cent. For this reason alone, it is important that our country play an active role in the development of the new technologies shaping our future.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

NR # 79-16



Mme Sauvé concluded by saying that Canada will do everything in its power to ensure Canadian pre-eminence in domestic communications and a strong competitive position in the world telecommunications market.

For further information, contact:

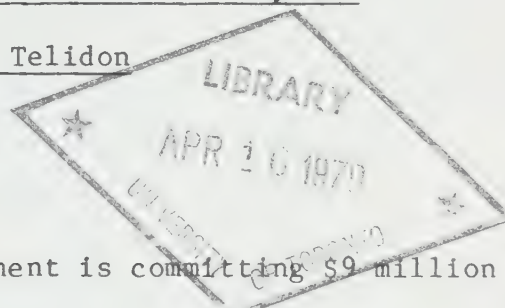
Marc Lessard  
Minister's Office  
(613) 593-5263

Yves Roy  
(613) 996-7706



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Federal government commits \$9 million over 4 years  
to development of Telidon



TORONTO, April 2, 1979 -- The federal government is committing \$9 million in a co-operative program with industry to further the development of Telidon over the next four years, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauv  announced today at the Canadian Cable Television Association's annual convention in Toronto. Telidon is an interactive television system developed at the Communications Research Centre.

"The federal government is convinced that Telidon presents important opportunities to Canadian industry, including the cable industry. We cannot afford to miss them," Mme Sauv  said. "Telidon has the potential for creating thousands of jobs for Canadians in the manufacturing and service supply industries."

A Telidon subscriber would be able to use a slightly modified television receiver for the display of graphics or information which could be retrieved from any number of data banks merely by the subscriber's making a telephone call and pushing a few buttons on a key pad device, not unlike a pocket calculator. A number of system configurations and various capabilities could be built into the system depending upon the user's needs.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Since announcement of its development last August, Telidon has received a positive reaction, both in Canada and abroad, even though its development was started several years behind those of its European competitors. Federal government involvement, which is planned to terminate after the four year period, is designed to help industry close the development gap quickly. The federal contribution is expected to be more than matched by industry expenditures during the four-year program.

The \$9 million will largely be spent in assisting Canadian industry to develop the necessary range of products and in assisting Canadian organizations sponsoring field trials to pay the extra cost of the trials incurred through using Telidon prior to its reaching full production status. About \$3 million is to be spent in the 1979-80 fiscal year.

Although there are as yet no definitive statistics on consumer acceptance of this new product, European governments are pouring millions of dollars into the technology. One recent independent study for the Department of Communications estimated that the number of Telidon subscribers in Canada alone could exceed 600,000 by 1986. "But this estimate, like those on the job potential, depends on a number of factors, especially on how quickly we act in this area," Mme Sauvé said.

"We are convinced that Telidon is the best technology of its kind in the world and that Canadian industry has an excellent chance to compete successfully," the Minister said.

Mme Sauv  emphasized that Telidon can work with several different media, with the paired copper wire of telephone companies, with coaxial cable, with off-air broadcast and with fibre optic cable. Field trials using all these are expected to be under way by the end of this year. She also said that a continuing and co-operative industry-government effort to develop Telidon is envisaged.

She urged cable operators to "actively explore the possibilities of this new technology and participate in some of the Telidon research."

Other highlights from the Minister's address to the cable association are as follows:

-- The Report of the Consultative Committee on the Implications of Telecommunications for Canadian Sovereignty (the Clyne Committee, after its chairman, the Hon. J.V. Clyne) is to be released to the public in a few days.

-- The Minister welcomed the cable industry's support of Canadian manufacturers of earth stations. "I think this would be an important demonstration of the cable industry's commitment to Canada's future."

-- Cable is distinctive and should no longer be viewed as simply a broadcasting receiving undertaking. "There is a real and pressing need to look again at the proposed Telecommunications Act with a view to clarifying the status of cable."

-- The Minister reassured the cable operators that before there were any transfers of regulatory authority on the operations of cable companies to the provinces that they, the cable companies, would be consulted. She said unnecessary regulatory duplication would be avoided.

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

VICE-MINISTER OF POSTS AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS OF THE PEOPLE'S  
REPUBLIC OF CHINA TO VISIT CANADA

OTTAWA, April 2, 1979 -- The Honourable Jeanne Sauv , federal Minister of Communications, announced today that Li Yukui, Vice-Minister of Posts and Telecommunications of the People's Republic of China, will visit Canada from April 2 - 12. Mr. Li will lead a delegation of government officials on the visit which results from Mme Sauv 's late January invitation to Wang Zigang, Minister of Posts and Telecommunications of the People's Republic.

During his stay in Canada, Mr. Li will have discussions with Mme Sauv  and officials of the Department of Communications and other federal government departments. He will also have the opportunity to visit the Communications Research Centre at Shirley Bay, in the Ottawa area. Mr. Li will also meet with representatives of Teleglobe Canada, Telesat Canada, Northern Telecom Ltd., Bell Northern Research Ltd., Bell Canada, Spar Aerospace Ltd., several postal equipment manufacturing firms, the Electrical and Electronic Manufacturers Association of Canada and the Canadian Advanced Technology Association. Members of the delegation will thus have an opportunity to learn about the full range of Canada's capabilities and achievements in the field of telecommunications.

In recent years, the People's Republic of China has shown particular interest in the advanced technology of Western industrialized nations, and has established more and more contacts with countries such as Canada. In January, Minister of Industry, Trade and Commerce, the

Honourable Jack Horner, went to Peking with a delegation of Canadian  
Government of Canada      Gouvernement du Canada  
Department of Communications      Minist re des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

. . . 2

NR #79-17



businessmen, to establish the basis for expanded economic and industrial co-operation with China. This co-operation could provide significant benefits for our telecommunications industry, among others.

In announcing Mr. Li's visit, Mme Sauvé said that "Canada will have the opportunity to show the visiting delegation our expertise in the high technology field of telecommunications, backing up efforts by Canadian telecommunications firms to market equipment, services and know-how in the People's Republic of China." The Minister added that, "We are ready to share the benefit of our experience in the field of telecommunications with the People's Republic of China, where it may be of mutual interest."

For information: L.A. Bustos  
International development  
(613) 995-9810

Yves Roy  
Information Services  
(613) 996-7706

Marc Lessard  
Office of the Minister  
(613) 593-5263



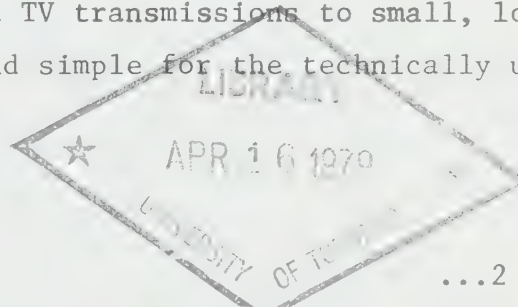
# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CANADIAN USE OF SATELLITE TECHNOLOGY TAKES A FURTHER STEP FORWARD TODAY

OTTAWA, April 2, 1979 -- A two-year, federal Department of Communications (DOC) program designed to help move promising new social applications of satellite communications out of their present experimental state, closer to everyday reality, goes into operation today with the inauguration of a three-month tele-education pilot project by the Ontario Educational Communications Authority (OECA).

OECA is the first of a score of governmental, educational and other groups or agencies taking advantage of DOC-leased capacity on Canada's latest commercial satellite, Anik B. They'll carry out a series of communications pilot projects in fields including health care, education, community communications, TV program distribution, provision of government services and data communications.

DOC has rented the entire 14/12 Gigahertz (GHz) communications capacity of Telesat Canada's Anik B, a "dual-band" satellite, with 12 channels in the conventional 4 and 6 GHz bands and four in the new, higher frequency band first used by Canada's experimental HERMES communications technology satellite. The high-powered HERMES opened the door to direct TV transmissions to small, low-cost earth stations --- (highly portable and simple for the technically uninitiated to operate).



...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Using earth stations built by Canadian industry and purchased and made available along with satellite time by DOC, OECA (which operates TV Ontario) is extending educational TV programming services for three months to the communities of Marathon, Geraldton, Manitouwadge and Owen Sound.

The OECA pilot project will enable people in these communities to participate in a new educational television concept the authority calls "Teleacademy". Four interactive television courses -- in parenting, the arts, earth sciences and communications technology, will be offered, through special satellite receivers feeding local cable TV systems.

Other Anik-B pilot projects scheduled to start later this month will deliver educational and health services from Montreal to the growing but remote settlement surrounding Northern Quebec's massive LG-2 hydro complex. Specialist resources of Montreal's Sacred Heart university hospital will be linked to the community hospital at LG-2.

The department is also refining plans for a major demonstration of both direct-to-community and direct-to-individual home TV transmission, to refine system concepts for operational delivery of such a service and stimulate Canadian industry to develop a domestic production capability for home satellite TV receivers.

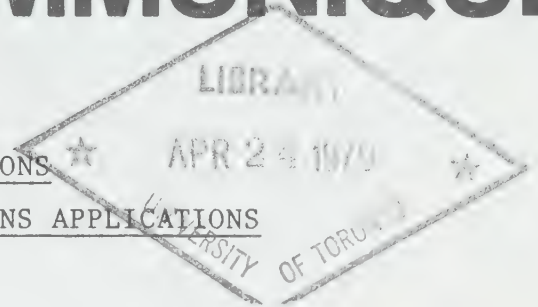
Ref: J.M. Bryan, Media Relations Officer  
(613) 995-8185

Pat Annesley, OECA/TV Ontario  
(416) 484-2781



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUÉ

FEDERAL GOVERNMENT AND CN-CP TELECOMMUNICATIONS  
CO-OPERATE TO ADVANCE SATELLITE COMMUNICATIONS APPLICATIONS



OTTAWA, April 6 , 1979 ----- Federal Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  and executives of CN-CP Telecommunications today announced joint plans for a major pilot project to develop and test new, commercially-exploitable satellite data communications technology that could produce important benefits for consumers in the 1980s.

The two will co-operate in the development of an advanced, time-division multiple-access (TDMA) system (called "SLIM TDMA"); then evaluate it, with a four-city network carrying data, voice, and slow-scan video signals to and from Montreal, Ottawa, Kitchener and Toronto, via Telesat Canada's Anik B satellite.

The \$2 million project unveiled today by the minister, A.J. Kuhr, President of Canadian National Telecommunications and J.G. Sutherland, Vice-President, Canadian Pacific Telecommunications, concerns new techniques for more efficient sharing of a satellite's transmission capacity among various numbers of ground stations. It combines Department of Communications expertise gained from recent TDMA experiments using Canada's Hermes communications technology satellite with CN-CP's experience in providing a wide range of commercial telecommunications services on a coast-to-coast basis.

The federal government will fund development of special TDMA hardware and assemble two 3.7 metre earth stations. CN-CP will purchase two additional complete stations from Canadian suppliers and provide the hardware and expertise to assemble and operate the trial communications network.

NR # 79-20

(more)



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Technology refinement and earth station procurement will start immediately, with first operating trials of the system slated to begin around October, 1980 and run to the late spring of 1981.

For the layman, the project means the prospect of lower-cost telecommunications services, such as integrated data and voice transmission and improved carrier ability to provide more flexible, custom-designed service to meet changing needs of a variety of types of customers.

Ref: J.M. Bryan, Media Relations Officer  
DOC HQ-Ottawa (613) 995-8185

Dr. Peter Nuspl, Communications Research Centre, DOC  
(613) 596-9441

John Cox, CP Telecommunications,  
(514) 861-6811

John Gibson, CN Telecommunications,  
(416) 365-3729



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## REPORT LINKS CANADA'S FUTURE AS A SOVEREIGN INDUSTRIAL NATION TO MAINTAINING PROMINENCE IN THE FIELD OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS

OTTAWA, April 11, 1979 -- Communications Minister Jeanne Sauvé today released the 108-page Report of the Consultative Committee on the Implications of Telecommunications for Canadian Sovereignty.

The Report makes 26 recommendations (attached) on such vital issues as the degree to which both Canada's future as an industrial nation and her sovereignty depend on having a strong, competitive telecommunications and electronics industry; the scope, regulation and competitive status of cable television and pay-TV; the use of satellites and other new technologies; and the need for co-ordinated policies in the burgeoning field of computer communications. Its underlying theme is that Canada, by vigorous action now, can and must be a leader in telecommunications or fall behind as an industrial nation.

Chaired by former BC Supreme Court Justice J.V. Clyne, now chancellor of the University of British Columbia, the Committee of distinguished Canadians -- from several different walks of life and from all regions of the country -- was appointed last year by Mme Sauvé to advise her on a strategy to restructure Canada's telecommunications system to best contribute to the country's economic strength and industrial, political and cultural sovereignty.



. . . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The minister emphasized the report was an advisory one which she hopes will contribute to constructive public debate on the future of telecommunications in Canada.

During its intensive deliberations, the Committee reviewed current studies and other information supplied by the Department of Communications; assessed 67 written briefs (from virtually every major institution active in telecommunications in Canada) running to several thousand pages; received 22 delegations or individuals and heard oral presentations from more than 80 persons.

It terms its report "an attempt to identify the more important aspects of telecommunications on which decisions should be taken and to make recommendations as to what those decisions should be."

Copies of the Clyne committee report **will be available** for \$3.95 each from authorized government bookstore agents and other book retailers coast-to-coast, or by mail from: Canadian Government Publishing Centre, Supply and Services Canada, Ottawa K1A 0S9.

Quote catalogue number C021-5/1979 and make cheques payable to the "Receiver-General for Canada."

Ref: J.M. Bryan  
Media Relations Officer  
(613) 995-8185

Marc Lessard  
Office of the Minister  
(613) 593-5263

Attachment: 1. Recommendations of the Report  
2. Members of the Committee



RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE CONSULTATIVE COMMITTEE  
ON THE IMPLICATIONS OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS FOR  
CANADIAN SOVEREIGNTY

Recommendation 1

- a) Given that cable companies have been granted territorial service monopolies, they should be regulated on a rate-of-return basis.
- b) To this end, action should be taken to amend Bill C-16 for a new Telecommunications Act so as to allow the CRTC to regulate cable companies both as broadcasting receiving undertakings and as telecommunication carriers.
- c) For the purposes of implementation of a), the first cable companies to be regulated as telecommunication carriers should be those offering non-broadcast services which they are not now authorized to offer, such as fire and burglar alarm services, Telidon, etc.
- d) Cable companies should be allowed to provide non-broadcast services other than telecommunications carriage. When they do so, they should be required to incorporate a separate company for that purpose; if the separate company has the same ownership as the cable company, it should have a separate management and maintain a relationship sufficiently distant to ensure that fair access can be afforded to all competitors who wish to use the cable company's facilities. Under the amended legislation, the cable companies would, in their capacity as telecommunication carriers, be required to offer public access to their services and facilities, without discrimination and at just and reasonable rates.
- e) The CRTC should, in preparation for the eventual regulation of cable companies as carriers, institute effective cost-separation procedures by the cable companies, so that the cost of distributing broadcast signals received off-air, as directed by the CRTC, can be identified as one of the costs to be included in the rate base.

Recommendation 2

The pace and extent of plant integration for local delivery of telecommunications services should be determined by future technological, economic and social considerations.

Recommendation 3

The federal government should consider the introduction of amendments to Bill C-27 (for the creation of a Post Office Corporation) with a view to clarifying the role of the Corporation in the telecommunications structure as a whole, which must continue to include the private telecommunications carriers.

Recommendation 4

In our view the high level of long-distance telephone rates, an outgrowth of the uncoordinated regulatory process in the industry, is a barrier to national communication and understanding. We recommend that the governments and agencies involved cooperate to create a mechanism which will review long distance rates and determine that they reflect national as well as regional interests.

Recommendation 5

The broadcasting services provided by the CBC are the main national instruments for the preservation of Canadian social and cultural sovereignty and should be recognized as such. The CBC should be afforded whatever means may be required to reinforce its function in that regard.

#### Recommendation 6

A Task Force should be appointed by the Governor-in-Council under the Inquiries Act to report on and make recommendations with regard to the management, programming, and funding policies of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation, with particular but not exclusive reference to:

- quality and diversity of programming;
- "make-or-buy" policy for program production;
- the reflection to each other of the two principal linguistic communities in Canada, and the promotion of exchanges between the English-language and French- language networks;
- the proportion of the operational budget being devoted to program production;
- the decreasing audience-share of the CBC network, in particular the English-language television network;
- responsiveness to the public;
- the financial resources necessary to carry out the CBC's responsibilities under the Broadcasting Act;
- additional channels (off-air or on cable) to be used for CBC programming.

#### Recommendation 7

The CRTC should be authorized to issue broadcasting licences to independent corporations established by provincial governments to operate broadcasting facilities and broadcast programs of a general character, subject to the provisions of the Broadcasting Act and the Radio Act.

#### Recommendation 8

Bill C-16 should be amended so as to require private broadcasters to provide, inter alia, for a continuing expression of Canadian identity and to contribute actively to the flow and exchange of cultural and regional information and entertainment, as is already the case with the CBC.

#### Recommendation 9

The CRTC should introduce a points system for measuring Canadian content combining qualitative, quantitative, and prime-time aspects, without relinquishing the present concept of a minimum quantity, but with strong emphasis on quality.

#### Recommendation 10

The CRTC should establish classes of broadcasting stations as a base for determining the percentage of revenue, in each class, that should be devoted to program production.

#### Recommendation 11

a) Some of the revenues from cable subscription fees should be paid into a fund to be used for the production in Canada of programs to be viewed on television. All subscribers should contribute to this fund; it should be noted, however, that rate-of-return regulation for cable will mean in the case

many systems that a levy can be made for the purpose of the programming fund without increasing the present subscription fees. In some cases, the amount of the levy may have to be added to the subscription fee.

The Canadian Film Development Corporation (CFDC) or a new agency created for the purpose should be empowered to receive and administer the proceeds of the levies recommended in a) for the purpose of promoting Canadian production of programs to be viewed on television (including films), following the procedures now authorized and in use for the promotion of film production by the CFDC.

#### commendation 12

The federal and provincial governments should take action, as a matter of agency, to introduce incentives to promote corporate sponsorship of Canadian television programming and to assist the production, programming, and marketing of Canadian programs and films to be shown on television. Governments should consider the possibility of tax rebates for advertising on Canadian programs.

#### commendation 13

The problem of transplants - American stations carried in their entirety on Canadian cable systems - presents a perplexing mixture of conflicting needs, desires and rights.

The existence of the transplant system is inherently unfair to Canadian private stations and the CBC. The showing of U.S. programs on the transplants detracts from the commercial value of those programs to Canadian stations, even though the Canadian stations have bought Canadian rights to them. The Committee has concern that a time may arrive when, most of the country having been reached by cable, there will be little or no commercial value to Canadian stations in using U.S. programs.

In addition the transplants on cable spread foreign advertising far beyond the border areas and make it unnecessary in some cases for international corporations to buy advertising in Canada; they are covered by the "overflow" of their American parent companies' advertising.

The majority of the Committee proposes that when a Canadian broadcaster buys exclusive rights to a program for a given area, cable companies in that area be required to respect these rights and the CRTC to enforce them. This action should not be taken before public discussion and debate, including CRTC hearings.\*

Two members of the Committee (Clyne, Fulford) firmly hold the view that this would be unacceptable to Canadian viewers who regard the watching of transplants as an incremental right, given the technological capability of cable.

It has been proposed to the Committee that Canadian cable simply delete all commercials from U.S. transplants. The Committee rejected this suggestion on the grounds that it would amount to unethical treatment of the U.S. stations.

---

We note that in the United States the ownership of programs within a given area is protected by law and practice and that cable systems routinely block out programs from distant stations in order to protect the rights of local stations. Were Canadian cable companies to follow a similar rule, it would not be at variance with U.S. practice.

5. The Committee holds the view that eventually this issue may be resolved in terms of property ownership under a revised copyright law.

#### Recommendation 14

The federal government, which has traditionally exercised jurisdiction in the field of copyright, should urgently undertake a full revision of the copyright law, having regard to the extensive report made by Keyes and Brunet at the request of the Department of Consumer and Corporate Affairs and published in 1977.

#### Recommendation 15

The CRTC, in authorizing the carriage of television stations by cable, should continue to give precedence to Canadian stations, and should not increase beyond four the number of U.S. stations that may be distributed.

Mr. Clyne, Mr. Fournier and Mr. Beigie have reservations about this recommendation, and would allow the CRTC to have discretion as to the number of U.S. stations that may be distributed.

#### Recommendation 16

The federal government should renew the discussions with the United States with a view to resolving the border television dispute at an early date.

#### Recommendation 17

a) Pay-per-program television should be recognized as more appropriate for Canada than pay-per-channel. Pay-television should be introduced as soon as the technology for pay-per-program is developed.

b) Pay-television should be provided by licensed Canadian-owned program undertakings.

c) Attention should be given to the elaboration of Canadian-content rules appropriate for pay-TV.

d) There should be a levy on profits from pay-TV, to be used for Canadian programming, with the amount to be determined by the CRTC.

#### Recommendation 18

Any satellite policy for Canada should support and strengthen Canada's social, economic, and cultural goals. Accordingly, Canadian stations, networks and other program undertakings should be the only sources of radio and television feeds (regardless of the origin of the programs) to be carried on the Canadian satellite service.

#### Recommendation 19

The Committee fully supports the continued use of satellites to give Canadians access to the television programming of other countries. It recommends, however, that for such purposes the facilities of Canadian carriers such as Teleglobe Canada and Telesat Canada should be used. Except for the operations of Telesat and Teleglobe, commercial and community satellite receiving earth stations should be licensed for the reception of signals from Canadian satellites only. This recommendation does not apply to the operation of small individual receiving antennas owned by Canadians for their own use.

#### Recommendation 20

The Committee's view is that the Canadian satellites could be more fully used in the distribution of Canadian TV to all parts of the country. The federal Government should, as a matter of urgency, initiate detailed studies,

n consultation with the Governments of the Provinces, to determine the best means of establishing and financing a satellite transmission package that would provide alternatives to existing CBC programming (e.g. CTV, the House of Commons debates, educational television, TVA, and other CBC programming) as widely as possible throughout the country.

#### Recommendation 21

In light of Recommendation 20, Telesat should review its pricing policy to encourage optimum use of its satellites.

#### Recommendation 22

The federal government should vigorously promote the development of plans for the manufacture and marketing of the Telidon information system and ancillary equipment. This should probably take the form of a joint venture involving major participation by the private sector and investment from both the federal and some provincial governments. It might also suitably involve "chosen instruments" in the manufacture and the commercial development. In following this course the Department of Communications should assume leadership.

#### Recommendation 23

The federal government, in concert with the governments of the Provinces and the private sector, should stimulate forthwith the development of plans for the creation of Canadian-owned private databanks, as well as others funded by governments. Tax and other incentives should be devised for that purpose.

#### Recommendation 24

The Government should act immediately to regulate transborder data flows to ensure that we do not lose control of information vital to the maintenance of national sovereignty. Therefore the Government should:

) Launch a national awareness, campaign to explain the social, economic and cultural implications of the new electronic information society. Without a much wider appreciation of the fundamental nature of the changes now taking place it is unlikely that effective mechanisms for considering the issues will be developed, let alone the implementation of appropriate solutions. It should be the responsibility of the Department of Communications to monitor the developments in this area.

) Require that data processing related to Canadian business operations be performed in Canada except when otherwise authorized.

) Consider the feasibility of extending the provision in the Bill to revise the Bank Act related to the prohibition of exporting client data for processing and storage abroad. This might be extended, for example, to the insurance and loan industries.

) Provide greater access to risk capital for Canadian corporations in data processing, to prevent foreign take-overs. Use government procurement more effectively in promoting Canadian enterprise in this area.

) Promote more effective education and training for high calibre programmers, systems analysts, and others required for developing Canadian systems. The emphasis should be on application development rather than on machine-oriented research and there should be an effort to exchange personnel between government and industry.

#### Recommendation 25

We recommend that the government:

- a) Move quickly and aggressively, in consultation with private industry, to exploit Canada's technological leadership in such areas as Telidon, fibre optics and communication satellites.
- b) While recognizing the significant contribution that will continue to be made by small companies in high-technology industries, actively foster the formation of large Canadian-owned firms through mergers and consolidations (as in the case of Spar) in order to achieve production volumes necessary to compete in both domestic and export markets.
- c) Revise the combines law to reflect the need to rationalize the industry and to develop large companies.
- d) Encourage research and development through very substantially increased tax rebates on all research and development expenditures.
- e) Establish an environment of greater certainty for manufacturers by developing design standards that will facilitate adoption of Canadian technology.
- f) Recognize the fundamental importance of a secure domestic market base to the development of high-technology industries.
- g) Support, on a selective basis, qualified Canadian-owned firms through contracts for both research and development and production.
- h) Ensure that foreign technology is imported in a manner that will optimize its exploitation in Canada and abroad by Canadian firms.
- i) Be prepared to provide low-cost financing of loans to foreign governments, where necessary to facilitate export sales.
- j) Provide tax incentives to encourage the flow of venture capital into high-risk electronics undertakings.
- k) Foster the development of an indigenous mini-computer industry.
- l) Continue the highly desirable program of technological research at the Communications Research Centre and encourage the diffusion of the results of this research to private industry.

#### Recommendation 26

We note that in this area there is a serious lack of co-ordination of government policies and programs. We direct the Government's attention, as a matter of urgency, to the reorganization of interdepartmental leadership and the making of decisions in regard to telecommunications.

CONSULTATIVE COMMITTEE ON THE  
IMPLICATIONS OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS  
FOR CANADIAN SOVEREIGNTY

Hon. J.V. Clyne, Vancouver,  
Chairman

Mr. Guy Fournier, Quebec City,  
Vice-Chairman

Mr. Lloyd R. Shaw, Halifax,  
Member

Mr. Robert Fulford, Toronto,  
Member

Mr. Beland H. Honderich, Toronto,  
Member

Mr. Alphonse Ouimet, Pointe-Claire, P.Q.  
Member

Dianne Narvik, Calgary,  
Member

Mr. Carl Beigie, Montreal,  
Member

Mr. Henry Hindley, Ottawa,  
Secretary

Mr. Pierre Billon, Ottawa,  
Associate Secretary

COMITÉ CONSULTATIF SUR LES  
RÉPERCUSSIONS DES TÉLÉCOMMUNICATIONS  
EN CE QUI A TRAIT A LA SOUVERAINETÉ  
CANADIENNE

L'Hon. J.V. Clyne, Vancouver,  
Président

M. Guy Fournier, Québec,  
Vice-Président

M. Lloyd R. Shaw, Halifax,  
Membre

M. Robert Fulford, Toronto,  
Membre

M. Beland H. Honderich, Toronto  
Membre

M. Alphonse Ouimet, Pointe-Claire, P.Q.  
Membre

Dianne Narvik, Calgary,  
Membre

M. Carl Beigie, Montréal,  
Membre

M. Henry Hindley, Ottawa,  
Secrétaire

M. Pierre Billon, Ottawa  
Co-secrétaire



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CREATION OF COMMITTEE TO MONITOR SEXIST STEREOTYPING IN THE ELECTRONIC MEDIA

AI  
08  
N26

MONTREAL, April 25, 1979--A committee to monitor sexist stereotyping in the electronic media has been created, Minister of Communications Jeanne Sauvé announced in a speech today at a meeting of the Second International Advertising Show held at Place Bonaventure. This committee will monitor Canadian electronic media - particularly advertising - for sexist content and will make public its findings.

"The government's concern is based on the view that the use of sexist stereotypes in advertising is an impediment to the changing status of Canadian women and that the negative portrayal of women is becoming increasingly offensive."

The image of women as presented by the media is an important factor in the promotion of the status of women in society.

The committee will publish the results of its analyses to permit the public to put pressure on broadcasters and announcers. Mme Sauvé said she has "confidence that the committee, by providing avenues for translating individual concern into public pressure, will soon generate positive results."

The committee to monitor sexist stereotyping in the electronic media will have an independent status. Its first meeting will be held in

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Ottawa on April 27. The committee, to be headed by Stella Baudot, will comprise 12 members from all parts of Canada. The members have been chosen on the basis of their competence.

For further information, contact: Marie-Paule Beyrouti  
Information Services (613) 995-8185

Marc Lessard  
Minister's Office (613) 593-5263

Attached: List of members on The Committee to Monitor  
Sexist Stereotyping in the Electronic Media



LIST OF MEMBERS OF THE COMMITTEE TO MONITOR SEXIST STEREOTYPING  
IN THE ELECTRONIC MEDIA

---

Stella Baudot, currently a public relations specialist with the Consultative Committee on the Status of Women in Montreal, has a vast background as a researcher, animator and specialist in public opinion surveys. She belongs to numerous associations, among which are the Fédération des femmes du Québec and La Ligue des Droits de l'Homme.

Yolande Bonenfant has been involved in numerous activities at the national level. As well, she was a delegate from Canada to the United Nations in New York in 1973. A radio script writer for more than 13 years, she has also been a television animator. Mme Bonenfant has been president of several non-profit organizations.

Elizabeth Percival, psychologist, is chairperson of the Advisory Council on the Status of Women in Prince Edward Island as well as president of the Canadian Institute for the Advancement of Women. Her work has appeared in several publications including Atlantis: A Women's Studies Journal.

Mary Jane Palmer has more than 20 years of experience in advertising. As well, for 13 years she has been the Director of Women's Creative Services for Vickers and Benson.

Gail Newall has several years of experience in social work. In 1975, Ontario's Lieutenant Governor appointed her a member of the College of Nurses of Ontario.

Gaby Marchand is the accountant for Expo Mart Inc. Active in many community organizations, in 1974-75 she participated in a study on day care centres for the Fédération des femmes du Québec.

Jane Hughes is managing editor of Homemaker's magazine. She has won over 50 national and international awards for her work in journalism. She has also worked for The Toronto Star. She was a member of the Canadian Advertising Advisory Board's task force on Images of Women in the Media.

Chantal Leduc co-ordinated the work of the Advertising and Sexism study committee for the YWCA in Montreal. In its research, the committee discussed the subject with other women's groups, para-governmental organizations and advertising agencies prior to publishing its findings.

Helen Kerr, named Woman of the Year in 1978 by the Kamloops Business and Professional Women's Club, was a Trustee for the Kamloops School Board for six years until 1978 and was the Board's representative on the Kamloops Chamber of Commerce in 1974. She was a member of the Executive of the British Columbia School Trustee's Association.

Maria Eriksen, psychologist, was chairperson for the Calgary Status of Women "Action Committee" and a founding member of the Alberta Status of Women Action Committee. She established a committee to introduce Women's Studies at the University of Calgary in 1975. In the realm of her profession, she has published numerous articles and served as acting Head, Psychology Department, Calgary General Hospital.

Jane Glasgo founded the Red Barn summer theatre company in 1970 and co-founded Toronto's Tarragon Theatre in 1971. She is involved in various community activities and is now responsible for promotions at Saturday Night magazine.

CAI  
CPS  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

Federal government gives about \$20 million to Telesat  
for Canadian prime contractor of Anik D satellites

OTTAWA, May 15, 1979 -- Canadian satellites will for the first time be constructed by a Canadian prime contractor, Spar Aerospace Ltd. of Toronto, as a result of a development program of some \$20 million, Communications Minister Jeanne Sauv  announced today.

The funds are to be provided in the form of a contribution to Telesat Canada, Canada's domestic satellite corporation, to defray part of the extra costs to Spar in "tooling up" to design, build and test complete communications satellites.

The broad outlines of the plan enabling Spar to become the prime contractor were announced by the Hon. Robert Andras, president of the Board of Economic Development Ministers, on April 17, 1979, in the new development policy for the Canadian electronics industry.

Although Spar had made a bid to Telesat to manufacture the two Anik D satellites, Mme Sauv  said, negotiations between Spar and Telesat were not yet completed when Mr. Andras said that "about \$20 million" from the Economic Development Budget, first announced by the Prime Minister in August 1978, would be offered to Telesat in connection with the Spar bid. The Communications Minister also said she was pleased that one of the April 17 measures in support of the electronics industry was already coming to fruition.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Minist re des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Telesat contract of \$78.6 million will result in about 300 new jobs at Spar. In the past, satellites needed by Canada have had to be purchased from firms outside the country with subcontract work done by Canadian companies. The first of the Anik D satellites, which will operate in the 6/4 gigahertz (GHz) frequency range, will replace the now orbiting Anik A-3 satellite which will be at or near the end of its useful lifetime in 1982. The Anik D satellites are to be launched by the U.S. space shuttle.

Mme Sauvé said she was pleased that Spar will be the prime contractor. "It demonstrates that we in Canada have developed a strong capability in the high-technology, rapid growth area of satellites, which is appropriate since Canada is the second largest user of domestic satellite communications in the world, after the USA."

Echoing remarks made earlier this year, she stated that "With this step, we are assuring a market base from which this developing Canadian company can pursue export sales in a rapidly expanding world marketplace for satellites and related hardware."

The Anik C satellite, which is under construction now by Hughes Aircraft of California, provides for about 32 per cent Canadian content. The Anik D satellites, for the first time, will contain more than 50 per cent Canadian content. Among some of the subcontractors will be ComDev of Montreal, Fleet Engineering of Fort Erie, Ont., and SED Systems Ltd of Saskatoon.

Each of the two satellites will have 24 channels. The transponders will be of Canadian design and will operate at a power level of 20 watts. The program management will be handled by Spar's satellite systems division in Montreal. The testing, assembly and integration of the satellites will take place in the David Florida Laboratory at the Communications Research Centre near Ottawa.

Mme Sauvé said Spar will be building on the expertise developed from subcontracts for the Hermes, Anik A, B and C satellites. "I'm also pleased to see the extremely beneficial effects on Canadian industry of transfers of technology from government laboratories. I think the fact that we will now have a Canadian prime contractor is a dramatic example of government-industry co-operation of lasting value to our country, in this high technology area."

For further information, contact:

David Wright  
Information Services  
(613) 995-8185

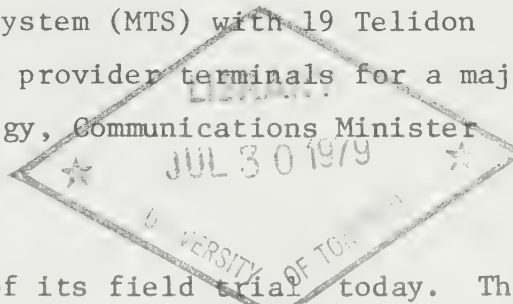
Marc Lessard  
Minister's Office  
(613) 593-5263

CAI  
C 48  
- N 26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## DOC to deliver Telidon terminals to Manitoba Telephone System for major field trial

OTTAWA, July 20, 1979 -- The Department of Communications is supplying the Manitoba Telephone System (MTS) with 19 Telidon user terminals and six information provider terminals for a major field trial using Telidon technology, Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today.



The MTS provided details of its field trial today. The Telidon terminals, manufactured by Norpak Ltd. of Pakenham, Ontario, will be on loan from the department. Delivery of the terminals will begin immediately and be completed by the end of 1979. More terminals from the next generation of Telidon technology may be delivered in 1980.

Telidon is a two-way television technology developed at the department's Communications Research Centre, near Ottawa. Telidon users would be able to use a key pad or key board to retrieve information from computer data banks for display on modified television sets. The information, in written or graphic form, can be delivered over various media, such as fibre optics, telephone or cable lines.

Telidon was successfully tested two weeks ago using Hermes, the high-powered communications satellite, and a portable earth station with a 1.2 m dish antenna. This was the first time Telidon was tested over satellite and opens the possibility of Telidon service to remote areas of the country.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



- 2 -

The Telidon sets being delivered to MTS will be used in a wide variety of applications, ranging from specialized business services to mass market services for home users.

- 30 -

For further information, contact:

John Smirle  
(613) 996-4243



CA1

C08

-N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CNCP Telecommunications will be allowed to interconnect  
with Bell Canada facilities

OTTAWA, August 1, 1979 -- The Governor-in-Council has decided to accept a May 17 decision of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission allowing CNCP Telecommunications to interconnect its facilities with those of Bell Canada in the provinces of Ontario and Quebec.

Under Section 64(1) of the National Transportation Act, the Governor-in-Council has the power to vary or rescind decisions of the CRTC. On June 15, 1979, nine telephone companies petitioned the Governor-in-Council to delay implementation of the decision pending a review of its implications. The petitions were supported by six provinces -- Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Manitoba and Saskatchewan. Other submissions from business and consumer organizations and the provinces of British Columbia and Ontario, supported the CRTC decision.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Minister of Communications David MacDonald, in making the announcement today, said the CRTC decision will stand since "it is clearly consistent with the priorities of the new government in encouraging competition wherever feasible within Canadian industry, particularly in those sectors with a high technological growth potential.

Mr. MacDonald said that the federal cabinet gave particular attention to the concerns expressed by many provinces over the potential impact of the decision on local telephone subscriber rates. "We were satisfied, however, that the effect of opening up the telephone system to greater competition in business services would not be reflected in the average Canadian's phone bill, but that it would create significant benefits for the economy in general. We noted that all the provinces who petitioned cabinet to vary the CRTC decision have jurisdiction over their own telephone systems. For interconnection to take effect within their boundaries would require separate applications by CNCP to provincial regulatory authorities. It would be possible at that time for the concerned provinces to modify, delay or prevent interconnection, so as to ensure that provincial economic priorities are safeguarded."

"In addition, the CRTC plans to carefully monitor the effects of the decision and, because of these provincial concerns, I have asked CRTC Chairman Pierre Camu to ensure that provincial regulatory authorities are fully involved in this monitoring process, including full access to all pertinent data collected by the Commission in its evaluations."

Mr. MacDonald said the decision represents "an extensive examination of the legal, economic and technical issues involved. The Commission has instituted reasonable safeguards such as that requiring the parties to report every six months on the number of connections requested and obtained. These measures should ensure that there are mechanisms in place to identify and correct any unforeseen impacts on the provision and cost of local telephone service as the competitive market continues to evolve. The government continues to believe that the public interest is well served by an element of competition in the provision of certain business telecommunications facilities and services that clearly fall outside the family of monopoly telephone services, and supports the existence of CNCP Telecommunications as an alternative national supplier of such services."

"This support for the existence of CNCP has been a consistent federal government policy for the past quarter century," the Minister said. "CNCP could never have developed to its present position, with the ability to offer nation-wide services, if government policies had not favoured such development."

The CRTC decision restores some balance to a situation where, because of a local distribution system conferred on them by their monopoly franchise, the telephone companies have a competitive advantage over CNCP in providing business services.

The Minister added, "as Canada and other developed countries move increasingly into the production of goods and services with a higher "information" content, the availability of low cost and reliable telecommunications services will be vital to our economic future. Competition in the provision of these services has in the past proved beneficial in spurring innovation and responsiveness to business needs. The CRTC decision ensures that this competition can continue in the public interest."

The Minister emphasized that the submissions of the Atlantic provinces and the provinces of Manitoba and Saskatchewan received very careful consideration by the government. "I want to make it clear that the government recognizes the legitimate concerns of the provinces for consultations on communications policy matters, and I look forward to meeting with all of my provincial colleagues within the next few weeks, as a part of this consultation process."

For information: Gary McKeehan (613) 997-4740 or 593-5263

Vince Hill (613) 996-3294

John S. Davidson (613) 995-8079



## BACKGROUND

### CNCP TELECOMMUNICATIONS: INTERCONNECTION WITH BELL CANADA

On May 17, 1979 the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) handed down a decision in the matter of the application to the CRTC by Canadian National Telecommunications and Canadian Pacific Telecommunications (CNCP) for network interconnection with Bell Canada. On June 15, 1979, a petition by members of the Trans Canada Telephone System (TCTS) requested the Governor-in-Council to vary or rescind Telecom. Decision CRTC 79-11. Submissions were also received by several provincial governments and business organizations.

In Canada there are two national telecommunication systems, CNCP Telecommunications and the Trans Canada Telephone System (TCTS). CNCP is an unincorporated consortium of the telecommunications divisions of Canadian National Railway Company and Canadian Pacific Limited. TCTS is an unincorporated association of nine major telephone companies across Canada plus Telesat Canada. Bell Canada (serving most of Ontario and Quebec) is the largest of the telephone company members of TCTS.

CNCP's position and indeed existence as a national telecommunications carrier has been formally encouraged by the federal government on at least two occasions, in the interest of promoting improved services resulting from increased competition. First, in 1953, the government allowed CNCP to build a separate regional microwave system to compete with Bell Canada; subsequently, in 1962, the government approved the construction by CNCP of a second national microwave system in competition with TCTS. In 1978, CNCP employed 4,460 persons, its gross investment was \$466 million, and its revenues were \$188 million. In the same year, Bell Canada employed 53,328 persons, its gross investment was \$9,108 million and its revenues were \$3,033 million.

The TCTS monopoly in basic telephone service has resulted in the development of a local distribution network that gives them a significant advantage over CNCP in the provision of business services. All the services of the telephone companies are accessible to their customers as quickly and easily as dialing an ordinary telephone call. CNCP customers, on the other hand, must access CNCP services through separate individual circuits, leased from the telephone company at considerably higher cost.

In the early 1970's CNCP made a number of representations to both government and industry to the effect that without being able to offer its business customers access to its business communications services via the public switched telephone network, it would be unable to compete effectively with the telephone companies in the future.

On June 14, 1976, Canadian Pacific Limited (CP), on behalf of its division, CP Telecommunications, filed an application with the CRTC seeking orders requiring Bell Canada to allow CP to interconnect its

telecommunications network with that of Bell Canada in Ontario and Quebec. The purpose of the application was to permit CP to provide certain categories of business services (mainly data communications and intercity private lines) on an equal basis with Bell. Canadian National Railway Company (CN) joined CP as a co-applicant on October 25, 1977 at the request of Bell Canada. The CRTC held a public hearing into the application, which began on February 28, 1978 and was completed on April 27, 1978. Final and rebuttal arguments were submitted to the Commission by June 5, 1978, and the decision was issued on May 17, 1979.

The CRTC decision grants the CNCP application virtually in full, subject to certain significant conditions pertaining to usage, technical compatibility and payment of compensation by CNCP to Bell. Voice as well as data communications are permitted under terms of the decision, although the use of interconnection facilities for voice communications is restricted in order to prevent CNCP from offering an alternative to Bell's public long-distance service.

The Commission rejected the Bell contention that the granting of CNCP's application would result in a loss of revenue of \$235 million in 1982, noting that the Bell figure assumed that CNCP would offer a direct alternative to public long distance telephone service, one of the telephone company's most profitable services. The CRTC pointed out that the CNCP application did not seek authority to provide public long distance service and in any event the Commission in its decision imposed certain safeguards to prevent CNCP from duplicating public long distance service. Rather than a Bell Canada revenue loss of \$235 million in 1982, then, the Commission concluded instead that the revenue loss would be no more than \$45 million and that this would be reduced by compensation paid by CNCP to Bell for use of its facilities.

The Commission plans to monitor the effects of its decision, and, accordingly, has ordered Bell Canada and CNCP to file semi-annual reports, providing such information as the number of connections requested and obtained from Bell by CNCP, the amounts of compensation payable to Bell by CNCP, and the revenue obtained by CNCP and Bell for certain services. The Commission has also stated that, if it were demonstrated in the future that any arrangements resulting from this decision were contrary to the public interest, appropriate action would be taken.

Other telephone companies, members of TCTS, appeared at the hearings to argue that Canada-wide interconnection would result in a revenue loss to them of \$182 million in 1982. The Commission, noting that Canada-wide interconnection could only come about as a result of specific decisions of provincial regulatory authorities, appeared to accept the CNCP arguments that the other telephone company calculations were based on "the same (or worse) erroneous assumptions in the Bell Canada estimates", concluding that the potential revenue loss to the

other telephone companies in 1982, due to this decision, would be approximately \$1.5 million. To put this figure in perspective, the total 1978 revenue for these companies was approximately \$1.5 billion. The CRTC termed the impact "negligible".

The Commission also accepted the CNCP argument that without interconnection the CNCP share of the competitive voice/data market would continue to decline. In 1977 this total market was estimated at \$514 million, of which CNCP captured 35%. CNCP presented evidence to show that the total market would be over one billion dollars by 1982. With interconnection, CNCP expects to obtain a 33% share of this market; without interconnection, its share would drop to 21% by 1982, and could eventually dwindle to the point that further investment in the business would no longer be justifiable. As the Commission stated: "Lack of network access is an important factor in CNCP's declining market share and failure to obtain interconnection will seriously hinder its competitive capability in the provision of data communications and private line services". Furthermore: "Dial access to the public switched telephone network is required for certain data communications applications, and will become increasingly important as time goes on".

The CRTC hearing resulted in well over 4000 pages of oral transcripts, and hundreds of pages of written evidence. The CRTC decision, which itself is some 300 pages long, represents a very complete and well-reasoned treatment of the issues.

On June 15, 1979 Bell Canada along with

Alberta Government Telephones,  
British Columbia Telephone Company,  
The Island Telephone Company Limited,  
Manitoba Telephone System,  
Maritime Telegraph and Telephone Company Limited,  
The New Brunswick Telephone Company Limited,  
Newfoundland Telephone Company Limited, and  
Saskatchewan Telecommunications,

all of which are members of TCTS, petitioned the Governor-in-Council to vary or rescind the CRTC decision under sub-section 64(1) of the National Transportation Act. The petition requests that the Governor-in-Council a) vary or rescind the CRTC decision on an interim basis by ordering a delay until the national implications have been reviewed, and b) thereafter, vary or rescind the decision to the extent deemed appropriate by the Governor-in-Council. Submissions have also been made to the government by the Atlantic provinces jointly, and by Saskatchewan and Manitoba, all of which also support the TCTS petition for a delay and a review of the national implications of the Decision. Ontario, British Columbia and several business organizations have made submissions in support of the CRTC Decision.

The type of interconnection sought by CNCP has been permitted in the United States since 1971. Since the telecommunication market has been opened up to competition, the established telephone industry and the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) have been disputing the economic impact of competition. Carriers have argued that local telephone rates will ultimately have to rise, while the FCC has condemned this assertion. To date, the existence of competition has had no significant impact on the revenues of the telephone companies, many of which have recently experienced record levels of earnings.

In summary, the submissions received in response to the TCTS petition reiterated the positions taken at the CRTC hearings. The petition itself, however, represented a substantial change in the telephone companies' position. Whereas their response to the CNCP application, as presented at the CRTC hearing, dealt almost exclusively with competitive factors and legal, economic and technical matters, the petition itself is much closer in position to that taken by those provinces opposing the application, namely, that the decision should be suspended pending a review of the national policy implications.

The Government has now reviewed the petition of the telephone companies and all other submissions. After careful consideration, it has decided to support CRTC Decision 79-11, for the reasons outlined in the attached news release.

SUBMISSIONS IN FAVOUR OF TELECOM. DECISION CRTC 79-11

Canadian National Railway Company and Canadian Pacific Limited  
Westinghouse Canada Limited  
Switzer Engineering Services Limited  
Canadian Industrial Communications Assembly  
CNCP Telecommunications  
Business Intervenors Society of Alberta  
Canadian Manufacturers' Association  
Canadian Business Equipment Manufacturers Association  
British Columbia Government  
Canadian Federation of Independent Business  
Comshare Limited  
IBM Canada Ltd.  
Canadian Railway Labour Association  
Pharmaceutical Manufacturers Association of Canada  
Ontario Government  
The Durham Group Telecommunications Consulting Services Inc.  
Costa Computer Services Ltd.  
Maclean-Hunter Limited  
Retail Council of Canada  
Data Processing Management Association  
Consumers' Association of Canada

SUBMISSIONS OPPOSED TO TELECOM. DECISION CRTC 79-11

Alberta Government Telephones  
Bell Canada  
British Columbia Telephone Company  
The Island Telephone Company Limited  
Manitoba Telephone System  
Maritime Telegraph and Telephone Company Limited  
The New Brunswick Telephone Company Limited  
Newfoundland Telephone Company Limited  
Saskatchewan Telecommunications  
Association des Compagnies de Téléphone du Québec Inc.  
Atlantic Provinces  
Saskatchewan Government  
Manitoba Government





P.C. 1979-2036  
26 July, 1979

PRIVY COUNCIL • CONSEIL PRIVÉ

HIS EXCELLENCY THE GOVERNOR GENERAL IN  
COUNCIL, pursuant to subsection 64(1) of the  
National Transportation Act, having considered all  
petitions received with respect to Telecom.  
Decision CRTC 79-11, has decided not to vary or  
rescind Telecom. Decision CRTC 79-11 of the Canadian  
Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission,  
dated May 17, 1979.

CERTIFIED TO BE A TRUE COPY - COPIE CERTIFIÉE CONFORME

*Marcel Fournier*

CLERK OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL - LE GREFFIER DU CONSEIL PRIVÉ



Ottawa K1A 0C8

Dr. P. Camu  
Chairman  
Canadian Radio-television and  
Telecommunications Commission  
1 Promenade Du Portage  
Hull, Quebec  
K1A 0N2

Dear Dr. Camu:

I am writing to you with reference to the recent Decision (Telecom. Decision CRTC 79-11) of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission granting to Canadian Pacific Limited and Canadian National Railway Company the requested interconnection of CNCP Telecommunications with Bell Canada. As you know, Bell Canada and eight other telephone company members of the Trans Canada Telephone System, have petitioned the Governor in Council, under sub-Section 64(1) of the National Transportation Act, to delay the effective date of the CRTC Decision.

The Cabinet has considered this matter very carefully, and has decided not to vary or rescind the Decision. The Cabinet, in arriving at this decision, noted the Commission's intention to protect the public long-distance services of the telephone companies and to establish reporting mechanisms which will permit the effects of network interconnection to be monitored. The Cabinet noted also the Commission's recognition of the need to take into account the interests of all subscribers, including those of other telephone companies, with whom Bell connects.

In view of the concerns expressed by some of the provincial governments with respect to interconnection, I would ask the Commission to explore with provincial regulatory authorities, through the inter-regulatory committee already established on Trans Canada Telephone System rates or a similar mechanism, how the monitoring of the full effects of the decision might best be done. I would also ask the Commission to share with provincial regulatory authorities, all relevant information that you collect as a result of monitoring the Decision.

I am sure that I can count on the Commission's full co-operation in this endeavour, and I look forward to being advised of your progress.

Yours sincerely,

David MacDonald

CAI  
CPS  
- N26

Government  
of Canada

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

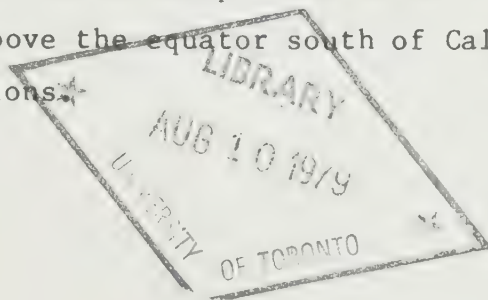
CANADA TO PARTICIPATE IN WORKSHOP AND DEMONSTRATIONS OF CANADIAN SATELLITE TECHNOLOGY IN AUSTRALIA, AUG. 22-24

OTTAWA, August 1, 1979 -- Canada will participate in a workshop and demonstrations of Canadian satellite technology in Canberra, Australia, Aug. 22-24, at the invitation of the Australian government, Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today.

The workshop, entitled "Satellite Communications -- The Canadian Experience and Australian Planning", and demonstrations are being arranged at a time when the Australian government is assessing the desirability of introducing a domestic communications satellite system.

Canada will demonstrate telephony via its Hermes satellite with two telephone terminals with 1.0 m dish antennas located in remote locations in eastern Australia and near Rockhampton. Both will be connected to the Australian switched telephone network. As well, Canada will be demonstrating low and high power television reception via the Hermes satellite using five 1.2 m diameter dish antennas in about 50 remote and rural locations in northern Queensland and New South Wales. Telephone and television reception will also be demonstrated at the workshop in Canberra. The Hermes satellite was moved from its location above the equator south of Calgary to the middle of the Pacific for the demonstrations.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Dr. John Chapman, assistant deputy minister (space program) in the Department of Communications, will lead the Canadian delegation which comprises representatives from the department, the Canadian Telecommunications Carriers Association, Telesat Canada, Spar Aerospace Ltd. of Montreal, SED Systems Inc. of Saskatoon and the Ontario Educational Communications Authority.

The workshop chairman will be Mr. Harold White, former General Manager of the Overseas Telecommunications Commission of Australia and chairman of the Australian Task Force on a National Communications Satellite System which reported last year. The workshop, to be held in the Australian Academy of Science in Canberra, will have two co-chairmen, one Australian and one Canadian, in addition to Mr. White. A number of papers on the Canadian experience with satellite communications and Australian planning will be presented.

As well, a teleconference will be held on each of the three days of the workshop -- August 22, fibre optics; August 23, telemedicine; August 24, tele-education. Demonstrations and briefings will also be given on Telidon, the advanced interactive TV technology developed by Canada's Communications Research Centre (CRC).

From August 27-31, the Canadian communications technology in the form of television reception using the Hermes satellite and the Canadian Telidon system will be demonstrated before delegates to the Institute of Radio and Electronics Engineers convention in Sydney.

Hermes is the eighth of nine Canadian satellites in orbit. Launched in January 1976, it had a design lifetime of two years, but now is in its fourth year of operation. The Canadian-designed and built satellite has been used in a wide range of social and technological experiments in areas such as tele-education, telehealth, community interaction and broadcasting to remote communities.

Hermes was the first satellite to operate in the 14/12 GHz frequency band. Its high power permits direct broadcasting to receiving dishes as small as 60 cm in diameter. Such earth stations are expected to be mass produced and cost as little as \$500 in the near future.

The Hermes experiments are being followed up by a number of pilot projects using Anik B, Canada's ninth satellite which was launched on December 15, 1978. Anik B operates in the frequency bands of 6/4 GHz and 14/12 GHz.

## SCHEDULE OF ACTIVITIES

<u>Date</u>	<u>Event</u>	<u>Locations</u>
4-21 August	-Deployment and testing of 4 TV receive only (TVRO) terminals and one telephony terminal	Eastern Australia
15-16 August	-Demonstration of Telidon	Melbourne
22 August	-Satellite communications workshop (overview)	Canberra
	-Teleconference and presentation on fibre optics	"
	-Demonstration of TVRO and telephony terminals	"
	-Demonstration and seminar on Telidon	"
23 August	-Satellite communications workshop (technical)	"
	-Teleconference on telemedicine	"
	-Demonstration of TVRO and telephony terminals	"
	-Demonstration of Telidon	"
24 August	-Satellite communications workshop (technical)	"
	-Teleconference on tele-education	"
	-Demonstration of TVRO and telephony terminals	"
	-Demonstration of Telidon	"
27-28 August	-Technical discussions with Telecom Australia, Postal and Telecommunications Department and others	Melbourne
27-31 August	-Additional demonstrations including telephony	Sydney
	-TVRO and Telidon demonstrations (at the IREE convention)	"
	-Presentation of Canadian Paper on 14/12 GHz satellite systems	"

MEMBERS OF THE CANADIAN DELEGATION

Department of Communications

- J.H. Chapman, Assistant Deputy Minister  
(Space Program)
- R. Huck, Satellite Engineer
- C. Archard, Technician
- B. Bolzon, Technician
- C.A. Franklin, Director General, Space  
Programs
- A.R. Molozzi, Director, Space  
Applications and Industry Programs
- N.G. Davies, Director, Space  
Communications Program Office
- R.G. McCullagh, Co-ordinator,  
International Space Industries Programs
- John Smirle, Telidon International  
Relations
- Tom Green, Telidon Technician

SED Systems Inc.

- M.P. Hodson, President
- J. Boulakia, Marketing Manager
- R. Plemel, Aerospace Systems Analyst

Spar Aerospace Ltd.

- R.D. Richmond, President
- J. Collins, Manager, Program Development
- L. Keyes, Senior Communications Systems  
Staff Engineer
- J. Barkwith, Senior Earth Station  
Engineer, Electronic Group

Telesat Canada

- P.A. Dufays, Vice President, Business  
Development
- R.M. Lester, Director of Engineering

Canadian Telecommunications  
Carriers Association

- D.J. Cruickshank, President

Ontario Educational  
Communications Authority

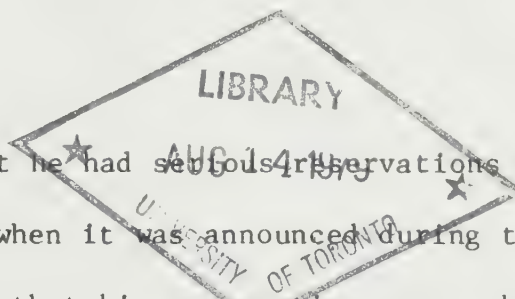
- M.L. Cioni, Manager (Liaison), the  
Telidon and Education Project

CA1  
C08  
- N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, August 2, 1979 -- The Honourable David MacDonald announced today that he has instructed his Department of Communications to adopt a more action-oriented plan to deal with sexist stereotyping in the media and to this end he has asked that the committee set up by his predecessor to monitor sexist stereotyping be disbanded.



The Minister stated that he had serious reservations about the purpose and usefulness of the committee when it was announced during the election campaign by the former government and that his reservations were shared by the Advisory Council on the Status of Women as well as by the National Action Committee on the Status of Women whose President, Lynn MacDonald, has written to him indicating NAC's lack of support for the committee.

"The problem of sex-stereotyping has been well-documented in the thirty studies that have been done since 1970, and what is needed now is not another study or a survey, but effective guidelines and standards through which broadcasters and advertisers can be pressured to change their attitude towards the portrayal of women in the media," he said.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



In this regard Mr. MacDonald said that he has discussed the problem of sex role stereotyping in the media with the Chairman of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, Dr. Pierre Camu, and has been informed that the CRTC is establishing a task force to develop guidelines and to encourage the elimination of sex role stereotyping in the broadcast media.

Mr. MacDonald stated that he is very pleased with the scope of the proposed task force. Representatives from the advertising industry, broadcasting industry, women's groups and the Advisory Council on the Status of Women will be invited to participate.

The Committee to Monitor Sex Stereotyping in the Media has already held two meetings and Mr. MacDonald expressed his appreciation for the work they have done and the interest that they have taken. He said he will be writing to the individual committee members and hopes that they will continue to be involved either directly or indirectly in the work of the CRTC's task force.

For further information:

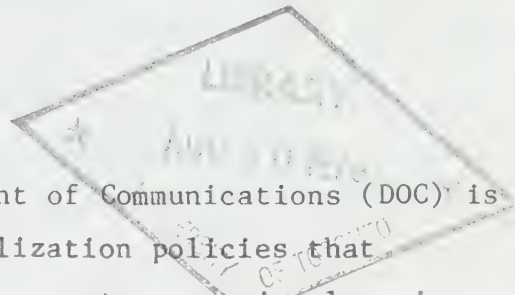
Carol Collier, (613) 997-4740



CAI  
CPS  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

MICROWAVE RADIO USE IN CANADA  
SUBJECT OF MAJOR REVIEW



OTTAWA, August 20, 1979 --- The federal Department of Communications (DOC) is undertaking a major review of radio spectrum utilization policies that encompasses frequencies employed by most microwave systems now in place in Canada. Submissions from all parties interested in the future use of the spectrum between 1 and 10 Gigahertz (GHz) are invited.

The review will place special emphasis on "fixed" radio services -- those used for radio relay of voice, video or data traffic between specific fixed points. While it will concentrate on bands which have not been reviewed in detail in recent years, all bands and services in this large and vital range of spectrum will fall under close scrutiny.

The three-part process, initiated today with the release of a discussion paper --- titled "The Utilization of the Radio Spectrum in the Range .890 to 10.68 GHz" --- will lead to updated frequency band and channelling policies. As in all spectrum policy reviews, due recognition will be given to the nature and extent of existing capital investment in systems.

The DOC discussion paper summarizes issues and concerns governing the future use of the spectrum being studied. It is intended to stimulate reaction among interested parties.

... 2

NR# 79-35



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



After assessing responses to the paper and other submissions, DOC aims to present, by late next winter, specific policy proposals for meeting all forms of identifiable new or growing needs for spectrum in this range, handling new technology and practices and better-accommodating such specific trends as the wider use of satellite systems and conversion by the telephone industry from analogue to digitally-modulated microwave relay systems.

Then, after an appropriate period for further public comment, proposals based on all discussions will be presented to Communications Minister David MacDonald, who may be in a position to announce final policies toward the end of 1980.

The main users of the frequency range being examined are common carriers, (such as the major telephone companies) broadcasters, electrical power utilities, cable TV operators and various federal and provincial government agencies.

This comprehensive review of the 1-10 GHz segment of the electromagnetic frequency spectrum is part of an ongoing series of periodic assessments of spectrum utilization policies in Canada, designed to keep such policies in tune with current economic, technical and other factors. Recent reviews and licensing policy changes have covered only specific bands within this microwave spectrum, above, or just below it.

Copies of the discussion paper are available from: the distribution clerk, Information Branch, DOC headquarters, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, K1A 0C8, Telephone (613) 995-8185, or from regional offices of the department in Moncton, Montreal, Toronto, Winnipeg and Vancouver.

Submissions, to be postmarked not later than Dec. 21, 1979, should be mailed to: the Director-General, National Telecommunications Branch, Department of Communications, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, K1A 0C8.

For further information:

Mike Bryan, Media Relations & Public Liaison  
(613) 995-8185

Dr. A.W. Adey,  
National Telecommunications Branch  
(613) 996-1491

M.J. Hunt,  
Telecommunications Regulatory Service  
(613) 992-1665

CAI  
C 6  
-N26

DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNICATIONS AND BELL CANADA  
REACH AGREEMENT FOR CANADA'S BIGGEST VIDEOTEX TRIAL

OTTAWA (August 28, 1979) ----- A co-operative, \$10 million venture that will help Canada maintain its technological lead in interactive visual communications was announced today by the federal Department of Communications (DOC) and Bell Canada, this country's largest telecommunications carrier.

Bell Canada President J.C. Thackray and Communications Minister David MacDonald said a field trial will see 1,000 Canadian-made user terminals offering both residential and commercial trial users a choice of up to 100,000 "pages" of on-demand information, for display on their own color television sets by early 1981.

It will be one of the world's largest trials of videotex (the internationally-recognized term for such public, network-based information systems) since the British Post Office launched its experimental Prestel system. Bell has adopted the name Vista for its interactive visual information services and, last February, began a small, in-house test of first-generation "alpha-mosaic" technology, similar to that employed in systems under test in Europe. Now, Bell will be using the second-generation, "alpha-geometric" Canadian Telidon approach.

The federal government's \$2.5 million participation in this co-operative trial is part of a total \$9 million in public funds allocated over the next four years for the further development and exploitation of Telidon by Canadian industry.

Mr. MacDonald said that while the federal government was supporting many other, smaller Canadian field trials of Telidon, "the reaching of this agreement with one of the world's largest, most technologically-advanced common carriers is the biggest milestone to date in the development of videotex services in Canada.

"It provides a tremendous boost to our efforts to show the world that Canadian videotex technology is the best available anywhere," he added. "We hope this co-operation between Bell and DOC will enable Canada to exploit fully this technological lead."

"We have been genuinely impressed by the government's Telidon technology since its introduction," said Mr. Thackray. "Now that we have had the opportunity, during our Vista pilot project, to explore broader system design issues, we feel we are in a better position to apply this new technology to our service concept," he added.

Telidon represents a significant technological improvement over other existing videotex systems: it is more flexible and can more easily accommodate future growth and improvements. Most importantly, its superior quality resolution and graphics make Telidon the first among today's interactive television technologies.

The accord reached by DOC and Bell will see the government purchase and loan 675 Telidon user terminals to the carrier, with Bell supplying another 325. Current plans call for 28 "information provider" terminals. The terminals will be built by Norpak Ltd., of Pakenham, Ont., and other Canadian companies, possibly including Northern Telecom Ltd.

System design and implementation will be carried out by Bell Canada and Bell-Northern Research, in close consultation with the DOC Communications Research Centre engineers who invented Telidon.

Using a standard color TV set, a pocket calculator-sized keypad (or optional full keyboard) and a small adapter to connect both to the subscriber's ordinary telephone line, Vista users will access a host of visual information and communications services, such as constantly updated travel schedules, news, weather and sports headlines, stock market quotations, consumer bulletins, entertainment guides, classified ads and other "yellow-pages" type listings. It's expected they will also be able to do such things as reserve plane tickets, teleshop, or leave messages for other users.

The Bell Canada experiment with Telidon will thus bring together an increasingly information-oriented society with information providers -- such as governments, airlines, news services and a potentially unlimited number of "electronic publishers" or information entrepreneurs -- who can successfully give or sell their information "products" in the rapidly-emerging new information marketplace.

The Bell president said a variety of potential information providers had expressed strong interest in the company's interactive visual communications concept during the Vista pilot demonstration. Many of these will be participating in the field trial announced today.

The schedule for this new Vista trial calls for conversion of the existing Bell pilot system to Telidon capability by the end of this year. First installation of user terminals for the field trial is slated for September, 1980. The trial itself will run throughout most of 1981. Most terminals -- both user and provider -- are expected to be located in Toronto, as will the data base computer, which will be accessible for demonstration purposes from other locations.

The forthcoming trial will monitor the public's overall reaction to the capabilities and potential of such a system, assessing human factors, technological aspects and the relative popularity of different information offerings.

Given satisfactory results, the field trial could well be expanded by Bell at a later date into a full market trial.

For further information:

Charles Gravelle,  
Bell Canada  
(613) 239-4928

Michael Bryan,  
DOC Headquarters,  
(613) 995-8185

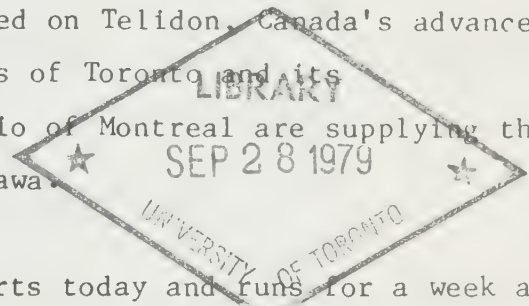
CAI  
COP  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## TRANSATLANTIC ELECTRONIC NEWSPAPER TO BE DEMONSTRATED ON TELIDON

OTTAWA, September 20, 1979 -- An electronic newspaper is to be delivered on an experimental basis in Canada and across the Atlantic at the same time and faster than ever before. Almost as fast as the news is put on the wire in Montreal and Toronto, viewers in Geneva will be able to read it.

The electronic newspaper will be delivered on Telidon, Canada's advanced two-way television technology. Broadcast News of Toronto and its French-language affiliate, Nouvelles Télé-Radio of Montreal are supplying the wire services to the Telidon data bank in Ottawa.



Delivery of the electronic newspaper starts today and runs for a week at the federal Department of Communications' exhibit in the Canadian pavillion at Telecom '79 in Geneva. Telecom '79 is the prestigious international telecommunications exposition sponsored by the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) and held once every four years for nations to show the latest in telecommunications technology and equipment.

Visitors to Canada's exhibit at Telecom '79 will have up-to-the-minute news, weather and sports delivered on four Telidon-equipped TVs.

Telidon, the most technologically advanced videotex system in the world, was developed by the scientists and engineers at the federal Communications Research Centre (CRC), near Ottawa. It features high-quality color graphics and can be used for a variety of applications such as information retrieval, data processing, text editing and electronic mail.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The four Telidon terminals in use in Geneva will allow visitors to Canada's exhibit to retrieve information from a data base stored in a CRC computer in Ottawa. Teleglobe Canada has arranged for a two-way circuit via transatlantic telephone cable to be dedicated exclusively to this use. Advanced communications equipment, known as a multiplexer and modem arrangement, provided courtesy of Gandalf Communications Ltd. of Ottawa, enables all four terminals to operate on the one line.

The data base at the CRC contains a variety of information on such topics as tourism, history, finance, education and now it will also have the latest news, weather and sports. Before the news from the wire service is stored in the data base, it is categorized by computer under various headings for easier retrieval.

Telidon viewers use the telephone to call up the computer which then presents an index or "menu" of the subjects on a Telidon-equipped TV. To select the "page" or pages of information he or she wants, the user simply pushes a few buttons on a key pad, not unlike a pocket calculator.

Also on display at Canada's exhibit in Geneva will be an information provider terminal which will allow users to easily create their own graphics or text which can then be put into a Telidon data base, even if they are unfamiliar with the intricate workings of computer systems and technologies.

The DOC exhibit in Geneva will also feature a display on fibre optic research and field trials, on technical and social experiments undertaken with the Anik B satellite, and a demonstration of the mobile radio data terminals, among the most sophisticated in the world, which were developed by government and industry in Canada and are now being marketed worldwide by International Mobile Data, Inc. of Richmond, B.C.

The Canadian exhibit in Hall 3, Stands 424 to 441, at the Palais des Expositions in Geneva, is sponsored by Canada's Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce. Twenty-one Canadian firms and organizations are participating.



CAI  
C08  
- N26

Government  
Publications

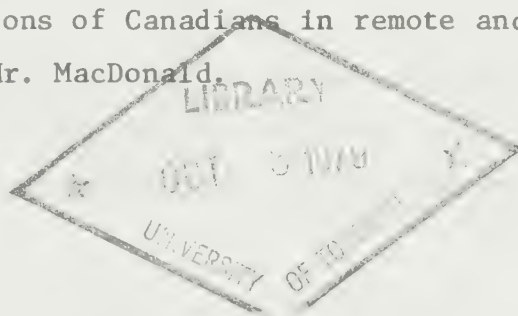
# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## CANADA FIRST NATION TO START DIRECT-TO-HOME TV BROADCASTING SERVICE BY SATELLITE

OTTAWA, September 25, 1979 -- Federal Communications Minister David MacDonald announced that a new chapter in television history opens in Canada today as the Anik B satellite begins transmitting TV programming directly to rural homes, community centres and cable television systems, which are being loaned small, dish-shaped earth stations for receiving the programming.

As a result of a project sponsored by the federal Department of Communications (DOC) in co-operation with broadcasters and provincial departments, Canada becomes the first country to install earth stations in private homes to test a direct broadcast satellite service. The project beginning today is planned to continue until at least next spring.

"If this project is a success and if our government decides to develop the concept of direct-to-home satellite broadcasting a step further, millions of Canadians in remote and rural areas will benefit," said Mr. MacDonald.



. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The department purchased 100 earth stations from SED Ltd of Saskatoon to be used in the project. Electrohome Ltd. of Waterloo, Ont., and Andrew Antenna Ltd. of Toronto were major subcontractors. Engineers from the DOC have been working for several years in developing the technology of small, low cost earth stations.

The dishes are being distributed now to families in Ontario and there are plans to extend the project to British Columbia and possibly the Yukon and Northwest Territories at a later date. More than 12 hours a day of TV programming will be available over Anik B, the satellite launched last December for Telesat Canada. The DOC has leased channel space for two years for this and other projects using the 14/12 gigahertz (GHz) transponders on Anik B.

Ontario viewers will have access to programming supplied by TV Ontario, while those in British Columbia and the North will have access to CBC and CTV programming. The first home users of the earth stations will be the King family of Macdiarmid, Ont., a village about 170 km northeast of Thunder Bay on the shores of Lake Nipigon. The B.C. portion of this project is expected to get underway in October.

Users of these earth stations in Ontario are being chosen by the project participants which include the department, Ontario Educational Communications Authority, the Ontario ministries of Transportation and Communications, Culture and Recreation, and Northern Affairs.

Inauguration of the project is to be marked by a special 10-minute broadcast on TV Ontario. The program, to be aired at 9:50 p.m., September 26, features interviews with participants and a brief explanation of how the technology works.

Although there have been other direct broadcast satellite experiments in Canada and other countries -- including tests conducted by the DOC using Hermes, the eighth Canadian satellite -- this will be the first trial involving extended transmission of regular programming to substantial numbers of home receivers.

Mr. MacDonald said the department has undertaken this project "not only to test the feasibility of using small, low cost earth stations for direct-to-home satellite broadcasting but also to stimulate an important high technology industry in Canada."

The programming available via the Anik B for this project has been chosen following consultations with the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, the provinces involved and broadcasters. The 14/12 GHz frequency bands used in this project are different from those in which CBC programming is carried on the Anik A series of satellites.

The chief advantage of operating in the 14/12 GHz band is that smaller and lower cost earth stations can be used compared to those used with satellites operating in the 6/4 GHz band such as the Anik A series and U.S. communications satellites. The department is using 1.2 metre and 1.8 metre dish antennas. The direct-to-home satellite broadcasting project is one of a number being carried out as part of a DOC Anik B satellite program announced June 1978. The department is leasing up to four channels on the satellite for the life of its Anik B program, at a cost of \$34 million. The lease charges also included satellite launch and operating costs attributable to the government program.

The earth stations to be used in the project cost about \$3,600 a unit plus about \$200 to install. The DOC is providing some of the initial installations and it is expected that the cost of the bulk of the installations will be borne by the other participants. Such earth stations could cost as little as \$500, or even less, if manufacturers are able to sell to a mass market.

CAI  
CFS  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## STUDY RELEASED ON IMPACT OF 1976 TELEVISION ADVERTISING TAX RULE

OTTAWA, September 26, 1979 -- Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today that a study carried out for the federal Department of Communications says a controversial tax amendment has achieved one of its principal objectives in redirecting Canadian advertising expenditures to Canadian broadcasters and has been particularly beneficial to newly licensed television stations.

The study, prepared by Donner and Lazar Research Associates of Toronto, is titled "The Impact of the 1976 Income Tax Amendment on U.S. and Canadian TV Broadcasters". It was undertaken for the Department of Communications to judge how effective Section 19.1 of Canada's Income Tax Act has been.

When the tax amendment was first considered in 1974, about \$20 million a year in Canadian advertising revenues was flowing to U.S. border TV stations for commercials aimed at Canadians. At that time, this represented about 10 per cent of total Canadian advertising revenues and more than the net after-tax profits of Canada's entire private television sector.

The tax measure, say the consultants, has reduced the annual flow of funds to U.S. border stations from \$21.5 million (U.S.) in 1975 to \$6.5 million by 1978. The report emphasizes the importance of the government's measure to the financial viability of the

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



commercial television broadcasting sector. The main beneficiaries are the five most recently licensed stations in Canada -- CKVU-TV, Vancouver; CITV-TV, Edmonton; CKND-TV, Winnipeg; CKGN (the Global Television Network) and CITY-TV in Toronto.

The study is available upon request from the department's Information Services, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, K1A 0C8.

For further information, contact:

Michael Bryan  
(613) 995-8185



CAI  
C 48  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

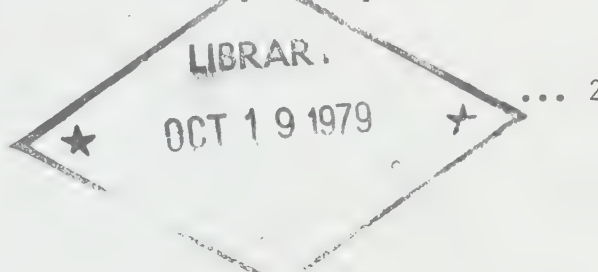
## JOHN CHAPMAN, FATHER OF CANADA'S SPACE PROGRAM, IS DEAD

OTTAWA, September 28, 1979 — Dr. John Chapman, the father of Canada's space program, died early this morning, apparently of a heart attack, in Vancouver, Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today.

Dr. Chapman, the assistant deputy minister (space program) of the Department of Communications, had been the driving force behind Canada's satellite programs for the last 20 years.

Mr. MacDonald said, "Canada has lost an extraordinary individual. Dr. Chapman played a major role in virtually every space activity in Canada. Canada's space program is where it is today to a very large extent because of his efforts."

Dr. Chapman initiated and guided Canada's entry into space by way of the Alouette and ISIS satellites, which gained Canada an international reputation in space science. In 1967, he was appointed chairman of a government task force to study and advise on satellite communications in Canada. The report, published in 1968, was officially entitled, "A Domestic Satellite Communication System for Canada", but became widely known as "The Chapman Report".



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Telesat Canada, the domestic commercial satellite corporation, was established a year later as a result of the recommendations in the report.

Dr. Chapman was also a prime mover behind Canada's communications technology satellite (CTS) program which started in 1971-72. The CTS program resulted in the launch in January 1976 of Hermes, the eighth Canadian satellite and the first geosynchronous communications satellite to operate in the 14/12 GHz frequency band. When launched, it was the world's most powerful communications satellite and was a forerunner of the direct-to-home broadcast satellite.

"One of Dr. Chapman's current enthusiasms was the idea of providing direct-to-home TV by satellite to people in remote and rural areas of Canada. He saw this prospect back in 1971, a prospect which is close to realization with the inauguration in Ontario only three days ago of the first direct-to-home satellite broadcast service," said Mr. MacDonald.

Dr. Chapman led a successful government-industry mission to Australia last month, which demonstrated Canadian industrial and scientific capabilities in the field of high-powered broadcasting satellites and small, low-cost earth stations to the Australians, who are considering setting up a system, possibly similar to that of Telesat Canada.

He was due to be presented in Toronto next Tuesday with the 1979 McNaughton Gold Medal Award of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, in recognition of his "outstanding contributions as a professional engineer to the development of Canadian engineering excellence...."

Dr. Chapman had pushed for the development of a prime contracting capability in Canada for the construction of commercial satellites, an idea which came to fruition a few months ago when Telesat Canada announced the award of the contract for the Anik D satellites to Spar Aerospace Ltd. of Toronto.

"Recognition of Dr. Chapman's accomplishments was not limited by our borders," said Mr. MacDonald. "He was known around the world for his drive, vision and competence of which Canada's leadership role in communications satellites is a manifestation."

Colleagues within the Department of Communications who had known and worked with Dr. Chapman for many years described him as an unusual combination of outstanding administrator and scientist. "He was extraordinarily far-sighted in seeing the possibilities of satellite technology," said one.

Bernard Ostry, the Deputy Minister of Communications, described Dr. Chapman as one of the most outstanding public servants in the history of this country. "Throughout his life, he served his country and his science selflessly and he died in the service of his country. His is an irreparable loss."

Dr. Chapman was born in London, Ontario, in 1921, and obtained a B.Sc. in Radio Physics at the University of Western Ontario in 1948, after interrupting his academic career to serve in the RCAF during World War II. The following year he obtained a Masters degree in Physics at McGill University, and two years later, a Doctorate in Physics at the same university.

Dr. Chapman won a number of scholarships at both universities, and was the recipient of a National Research Council Fellowship during 1950.

From 1940-1945, he served overseas with the RCAF as a specialist radar officer in Britain and West Africa. He retired from the RCAF at the end of the war with the rank of Flight Lieutenant.

In 1951, he was named a senior scientist at the Defence Research Telecommunications Establishment (DRTE) at Shirley Bay, on the outskirts of Ottawa, where he was in charge of the Ionospheric Research Section. He was later named Superintendent of the Communications Wing. In 1959, he was appointed Deputy Director General of DRTE.

He was Canadian Co-ordinator of the joint Defence Research Board (DRB)/U.S. National Aeronautics and Space Administration Alouette-ISIS ionosphere sounding satellite projects, and received numerous awards for his contributions to space research.

Early in July 1968, after spending a year in Quebec City participating in a Public Service Bicultural Development Program, he returned to Ottawa to assume the Headquarters position of Deputy Chairman (Scientific), DRB. Shortly afterwards, he was loaned to the office of the Postmaster General to assist in planning a new government department to be called the Communications Department.

He wrote many scientific papers as a result of fundamental research activities, including a number presented before learned societies. In 1956, he attended the 16th course at the Joint Services Staff College in the United Kingdom. He was a Fellow of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, the Canadian Aeronautics and Space Institute, as well as past president of the Academy of Science of the Royal Society of Canada. Dr. Chapman was a member of the Canadian Association of Physicists and the Association of Professional Engineers of Ontario.

Dr. Chapman received the Engineering Medal of the Association of Professional Engineers of the Province of Ontario in 1966. He was presented with the First Dellinger Gold Medal in Munich, Germany, at the XV General Assembly of the International Scientific Radio Union in September 1966, for scientific research in the field of radio wave propagation. He received the McCurdy Award for 1966 for outstanding achievement in Space Science and Technology from the Canadian Aeronautics and Space Institute. He was also awarded the Charles Chree Medal and Prize of the Physical Society and the Institute of Physics in London, England, in May 1967.

On May 26, 1967, he received the Degree of Doctor of Law (honoris causa) from Laurentian University in Sudbury.

In October, 1969, he received the Degree of Doctor of Engineering (honoris causa) from the University of Waterloo.

In January 1970, Dr. Chapman was appointed Assistant Deputy Minister for Research with the Department of Communications. In 1974, he was appointed Assistant Deputy Minister, Space Programs, in the Department of Communications.

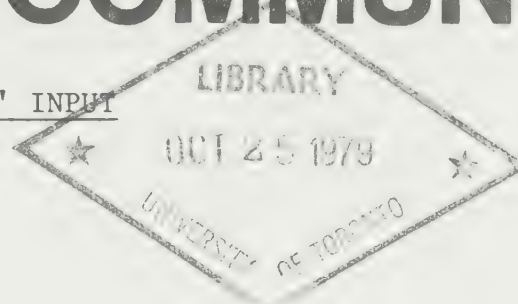
From 1972, Dr. Chapman was the Chairman of the Interdepartmental Committee on Space which is responsible for the coordination of Canadian space activities.

Dr. Chapman is survived by his wife and five children.

CA1  
C48  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

FEDERAL GOVERNMENT REQUESTS PROVINCES' INPUT  
BEFORE FILLING KEY CRTC VACANCIES



OTTAWA, October 12, 1979 -- Communications Minister David MacDonald has today written on behalf of Prime Minister Clark to all of Canada's premiers, seeking their recommendations for highly-qualified Canadians to fill the three vacant positions of chairman, vice-chairman for broadcasting and full-time member of the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

Sending copies of his letter (text attached) to all provincial ministers responsible for communications, Mr. MacDonald asks that provincial suggestions for "men and women of outstanding calibre and high public esteem" be submitted for the Prime Minister's consideration by the end of this month.

The federal communications minister also invites any other interested parties which wish to make recommendations to him to submit names by the same deadline.

His letter to the provinces says the federal government "is most anxious that the CRTC function in a way that will be sensitive to, and supportive of, the diverse regional and local aspirations throughout Canada," adding the commissioners of the CRTC should possess an understanding and appreciation for community life, be prepared to confront challenges posed by new technologies and be receptive to new approaches.

...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The government wants to fill the CRTC vacancies as soon as possible, because of the heavy workload facing the commission this Fall.

Text of  
Letter attached

Ref: Mike Bryan, Media Relations  
(613) 995-8185





Minister of Communications

Ministre des Communications

Ottawa K1A 0C8

October 12, 1979

My Dear Premier:

As you are aware, vacancies exist on the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

Our government is most anxious that the CRTC function in a way that will be sensitive to and supportive of the diverse regional and local aspirations throughout Canada. I am therefore most anxious to have your recommendations for the three positions of chairman, vice-chairman (broadcasting) and full time member.

The Prime Minister has emphasized to me that the Commission, whose decisions carry major implications for our cultural and communications priorities, must be led by men and women of outstanding calibre and high public esteem. A fundamental qualification for Commissioner must be an understanding and appreciation for community life as the basis from which the dimension of "communication" derives its mandate.

Commissioners must equally be prepared to confront what is surely the most formidable challenge in the communications field, that of ensuring the new distribution technologies serve Canadian needs. All commissioners must bring to their task a receptivity to new approaches and a capability to look beyond the immediate pressures to the evolution of efficient, flexible and democratic telecommunications systems in Canada.

The Prime Minister has requested recommendations for his consideration be submitted by the end of this month.

Yours sincerely,

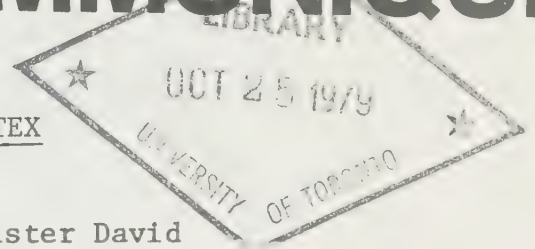
David MacDonald



CAI  
C08  
- N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CANADA AND FRANCE  
SIGN RESEARCH AGREEMENT ON VIDEOTEX



OTTAWA, October 12, 1979 -- Communications Minister David MacDonald and the French Ambassador to Canada, His Excellency Xavier Daufresne de la Chevalerie, today signed a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) related to research concerning common problems associated with videotex system design.

This Memorandum will increase co-operation between the two countries at the research, rather than at the commercial level. The Memorandum of Understanding, while respecting the specific characteristics of the French (Antiope) and the Canadian (Telidon) systems, is directed towards optimizing the advantages of each of the two systems. It is expected to benefit all nations with an interest in videotex by encouraging the search for solutions to problems which may arise with these new information services.

Signatories to the Memorandum on behalf of the two countries are the Canadian Department of Communications and the French Secretariat d'Etat aux Postes et Télécommunications, as well as Télédiffusion de France, the French government broadcasting agency.

- 30 -

See attached for full text of the Memorandum of Understanding

For further information contact: John Smirle  
Special Research Projects Officer  
(613) 996-4243



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



MEMORANDUM OF UNDERSTANDING

BETWEEN

THE DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNICATIONS OF CANADA

AND

THE SECRETARIAT D'ETAT AUX POSTES ET TELECOMMUNICATIONS OF FRANCE  
(DIRECTION GENERALE DES TELECOMMUNICATIONS)  
AND TELEDIFFUSION OF FRANCE

CONCERNING CO-OPERATION IN MATTERS OF RESEARCH AND  
DEVELOPMENT OF NEW TELETEXT AND VIDEOTEX SYSTEMS AND SERVICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Article 1 - Purpose of the cooperation.....	p. 3
Article 2 - Terms and Conditions .....	p. 4
Article 3 - Publicity and Copyrights .....	p. 5
Article 4 - Priority Actions .....	p. 6
Article 5 - Entry into force, Application and Termination	p. 7
Article 6 - Signature .....	p. 8

Article 1 - Purpose of the cooperation

1.1           The purpose of this Memorandum of Understanding (M.O.U.) between The Secrétariat d'Etat aux Postes et Télécommunications of France (Direction générale des Télécommunications) and Télédiffusion of France on one side, and the Department of Communications of Canada of the other side, is maximum co-operation in matters of research on and development of new teletext and videotex systems and services (within the current meaning given these services by the CCIR and the CCITT). This will involve finding mutually acceptable solutions to various technical problems arising out of the design and implementation of these systems and services. If necessary, co-operation under this M.O.U. may be extended to certain related systems and services. The Parties affirm their intention to use their best efforts to discharge their responsibilities under this M.O.U.

Article 2 - Terms and Conditions

2.1           The Secrétariat d'Etat aux Postes et Télécommunications of France (Direction générale des Télécommunications) and Télédiffusion of France on one side, and the Department of Communications of Canada on the other side, agree to the following terms and conditions of co-operation:

2.1.1          Co-operation will be developed on the basis of reciprocity and mutual interest.

2.1.2          The agencies concerned will exchange specialists, equipment, information and expertise with a view to exploring the specific fields of co-operation. The explicit conditions of these exchanges will require the joint approval of the agencies concerned and will constitute appendices to this M.O.U., added as the need is felt. An initial list of the priority fields is given hereinafter (Article 4).

2.1.3          With a view to experimenting on various configurations for systems and services, the agencies concerned will give their support to implementing pilot projects on a reciprocal basis.

2.1.4          Co-ordination will be sought with a view to presenting common positions on current or future actions to the various regional or international standardization authorities.

Article 3 - Publicity and Copyrights

3.1           The agencies concerned shall co-operate on the publicity which they intend to give both to this M.O.U. and to the actions arising therefrom.

3.2           The hardware and software which may be exchanged or produced pursuant to this M.O.U. will not be reproduced or marketed in whole or in part, and furthermore, will not be placed at the disposal of a third party for purposes of reproduction or marketing without the express permission in writing of either the agency which originally provided the hardware and the software, if it is the only one concerned, or of the agencies concerned should the hardware or software provided be the result of co-operation under this M.O.U.

3.3           The results of the experiments carried out using common resources (equipment, personnel or systems) shall be shared by both Parties. The publication and copyrights of the results of such experiments will be subject to the consent of the agencies concerned.

Article 4 - Priority Actions

4.1           The following aspects are now of high priority mutual interest:

4.1.1       Coding, visual characteristics, and transmission systems for interactive videotex and broadcast or cable-distributed teletext.

4.1.2       Study of the human factors connected with the design of the user's terminal and with the operation of new systems and services, particularly as part of pilot projects.

4.1.3       Study of the means of composing and editing messages.

4.1.4       The architecture of networks, traffic flow, data bank structures and operating procedures for systems and services.

4.1.5       Metrology and the performance of networks.

4.1.6       Study of the relations between these systems and services and other systems and services such as teletex (within the CCITT meaning of the term) and telecopying from the points of view of both coding methods and the interaction of the services themselves.

Article 5 - Effective Date, Application and Termination

5.1            This Memorandum of Understanding enters into force upon signature by the authorized representatives of the Parties.

5.2            It is valid for a term of 3 years, then renewable from year to year. From its entry into force, the Parties will consult at least once a year to discuss the nature and advantage of their co-operation.

5.3            After termination of the M.O.U. the terms and conditions of Article 3.2 will remain in effect.

Article 6 - Signature

6.1 This Memorandum of Understanding consists of Articles 1 to 6 inclusive; it has been made in four copies, two in French and two in English, all copies being equally authentic.

For the  
Department of Communications  
of Canada

For  
The Secrétariat d'Etat aux  
Postes et Télécommunications  
of France (Direction générale  
des Télécommunications), and

For  
Télédiffusion of France

Signed at

Signed at

---

Date

---

Date

CAI  
C08  
-N26

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

OTTAWA, October 15, 1979 -- On the eve of a federal-provincial meeting of Ministers responsible for communications, Secretary of State and Minister of Communications David MacDonald said there are a number of pressing problems in the communications sector and there is a "clear and urgent need to resolve these."

"The recent development of new communications technologies will open up new possibilities if we act quickly and wisely; but leaves us open to new dangers, particularly to our cultural sovereignty, if we don't," the Minister said.

"I am confident that the provinces share the sense of urgency I have and that, through federal-provincial cooperation, we will introduce new initiatives to meet these challenges."

The Minister identified two areas of particular concern -- the distribution of television services by satellite, and pay TV. "Satellite delivery of TV programming and pay TV to cable TV operations is already in operation in the U.S., and the spillover of signals into Canada makes reception of these services already available in this country.

"In the face of these new technologies and services, our primary objectives are to ensure that broadcasting services in Canada are extended to inadequately served areas of the country, and to stimulate the growth of the domestic program production industry;" the Minister said.

. . . 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



"Because of the need to move quickly in these areas," Mr. MacDonald said, "the federal government has prepared a discussion paper on the satellite distribution of television programming and pay television, which proposes a set of policy initiatives leading to the introduction of these services in Canada."

The discussion paper will be released publicly during the meeting after the provinces have had a chance to analyze it. The Minister emphasized that the paper does not represent a firm position of the federal government, but is designed to serve as a focus for discussion of these items at the federal-provincial meeting.

"I consider federal-provincial cooperation to be particularly important as we meet the communication challenges of the 1980s," the Minister said. "The passage of new telecommunications legislation, which paves the way for extensive and meaningful federal-provincial agreements in the field of communications is essential to this cooperation. I consider it an important piece of legislation and look forward to early passage by Parliament."

Mr. MacDonald said that, because of the importance of the meeting, he is in favour of the sessions being open to the media and public, but said the question is one which should be decided by consensus of Ministers at the outset of the meeting.

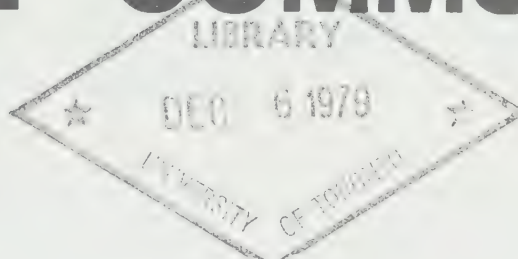
For further information contact: John S. Davidson  
(613) 995-8079



CA1  
CØ8  
-N26

Government  
Publications

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE



## Contact with Hermes, Canada's eighth satellite, is lost

OTTAWA, November 27, 1979 -- Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today that scientists and engineers at his department's Communications Research Centre (CRC) informed him that contact was lost with the Hermes satellite at 8:06 p.m. EST on November 24.

Launched nearly four years ago, on January 17, 1976, Hermes was Canada's eighth satellite. It was the first domestic communications satellite to operate in the 14/12 gigahertz band, which meant that earth stations smaller than ever before could be used to transmit and receive audio, video and data signals.

Regarded as the forerunner of the direct-to-home broadcast satellite, Hermes almost doubled its two-year design lifetime. The satellite performed so well in its scheduled two years of social and technical experiments, that additional third and fourth years of experiments were possible. It was being used in rain attenuation tests requested by the Australian government when contact was lost.

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



CRC officials said that at 8:06 p.m. on November 24, an anomaly re-occurred in the earth sensor of the satellite's control system, which in turn caused a loss in attitude control. At 8:11 p.m., all telemetry data ceased and at 8:14 p.m. virtually all radio frequency (r.f.) signals vanished because, it is believed, of a change in the satellite's orientation.

Both CRC and NASA have been monitoring the satellite for any sign of telemetry signals but so far none has been received. Officials believe the satellite is rotating slowly with its solar arrays or "wings" tipping sufficiently away from the sun to cause the loss of r.f. signals. All attempts to change the satellite's orientation have been unsuccessful although scientists are continuing their efforts.

At the request of the Australian government, Hermes was used in a variety of tests and demonstrations in Australia in August and September of this year. The Canadian Department of Communications (DOC) and NASA had agreed to switch the satellite off in mid-October. When the Australian Post and Telecommunications department requested an extension of the tests, the DOC cautioned that the satellite was two years passed its design lifetime and that it could not guarantee that a satellite failure would not occur. The tests, involving earth stations in northern Queensland, were to conclude in late January when the satellite was to be shut down permanently.

Hermes was designed and built in Canada at the Communications Research Centre at Shirley Bay near Ottawa. The satellite's 200-watt travelling wave tube and its launch were supplied by the U.S., who shared use of the satellite with Canada on an alternate day basis. The European Space Agency also participated in the Hermes program through the provision of certain electrical components.

CRC officials said the satellite was in such a high orbit, there was no risk of its ever falling to earth.

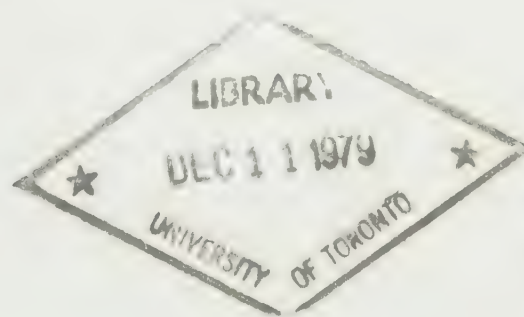


# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## MacDonald and CRTC announce two-phased public hearing

OTTAWA, November 29, 1979 -- Communications Minister David MacDonald and Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission acting Chairman Charles Dalfen announced today that the CRTC intends to hold a two-phased hearing as soon as possible, dealing with the extension of television services to remote areas, the satellite distribution of television programming and the question of the introduction of pay-television in Canada. A number of letters were exchanged this week between Mr. MacDonald and Mr. Dalfen regarding the forthcoming hearing.

Mr. Dalfen indicated in his letter to the Minister that a seven-member committee will be struck to conduct the first phase of the hearing, prior to licensing, and to report thereon. He expects it will be selected and begin its work before the end of the year. Three provincial representatives will be included among the seven members of the Committee. The second phase will involve "such licensing hearings as may be held, in part as a result of the recommendations of the committee".



... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



The Minister attached to his letter to the acting CRTC Chairman a number of objectives and guidelines which were finalized by federal and provincial officials at the direction of communications ministers who discussed pay TV and satellite distribution at their meeting in Toronto last month.

In a second letter to Mr. Dalfen, Mr. MacDonald said he supports the CRTC's intention to involve provincial representatives on a CRTC committee which would conduct the first phase of the hearing. He also stated that following the first phase of the process, it would be his intention to consult his provincial counterparts concerning the Committee's public report. The Minister added: "During these consultations, it may be opportune to formulate revised suggested objectives and guidelines which could be introduced in a timely manner in order that they be discussed at the licensing public hearing".

A public announcement will be issued by the Commission shortly, detailing the issues involved and calling for concrete proposals from interested parties.

Attached are copies of correspondence between Mr. MacDonald and Mr. Dalfen, as well as Mr. MacDonald's letter to provincial communications Ministers.





Minister of Communications

Ministre des Communications

Ottawa K1A 0C8

November 22, 1979

Mr. Charles Dalfen  
Acting Chairman  
Canadian Radio-television and  
Telecommunications Commission  
Central Building  
Terrasses de la Chaudière  
1 Promenade du Portage  
Hull, Quebec  
K1A 0N2

Dear Mr. Dalfen:

I am writing to you to apprise you of my immediate concern with regard to two important matters: the satellite distribution of television programming, and pay-television. As you know, these have been the subject of much deliberation in the recent past, including the Federal-Provincial Conference of Communications Ministers held in October.

In accordance with the discussions which you and I, along with some of your colleagues, have had on these matters, I understand that the CRTC attaches great importance to the provision of a greater variety of television signals to the remote areas of this country (I have in mind your Public Announcement of 27 June, 1979 - Extension of Broadcasting Services to Small and Remote Communities), and that it is the Commission's intention to call for a two-phased public process as soon as possible on that subject. I understand also that the process could encompass the questions of satellite distribution and pay-television.

You have also given me to understand that for the first phase of the process, prior to any licensing, it is the Commission's intention to involve provincial representatives in the consideration of the relevant issues. I strongly support this and believe it will serve a very useful purpose.

On the question of satellite distribution, my attention has been increasingly drawn, as has the Commission's, to the many Canadians living in rural and remote communities who do not have access to the number and variety of broadcast services widely available in more populated areas of the country. I have discussed this

matter with my provincial counterparts who have emphasized the need for concrete action to bring diversified television services to people living in isolated areas. I believe that satellite technology in Canada has progressed to the point where it is now technically feasible to provide all Canadians with a variety of broadcast services in the English and French languages.

Moreover, the rapid proliferation of satellite television services in the United States, and their technical availability in Canada, have prompted numerous requests from the public and industry for permission to receive these foreign signals. As you know, the instances of unauthorized reception of U.S. satellite signals in Canada are rapidly increasing in number. I am very concerned about this growing problem, particularly as it impacts significantly on the development of Canadian satellite television services and the domestic broadcasting system in general. Although there is an increasing demand for American satellite signals, a strong interest has also been expressed by various parties in Canada to use the domestic satellite system to distribute broadcast signals throughout the country.

I think you will agree that the time has now come to examine the potential that satellite delivery of broadcast services may have for Canadian broadcasting, and provide a coherent policy and regulatory framework for the development of these services. The prospect of widespread satellite distribution of television signals in Canada raises a number of important broadcasting policy issues, which in my view warrant full consideration in a public forum.

The sense of urgency to proceed with satellite television services in Canada is, in my view, paralleled in the area of pay-television. The pressures to introduce pay-television more widely in Canada have become an important element of any approach to establishing a national Canadian pay-television service in the near future. The rapid and extensive development of pay-television in the United States has led potential Canadian operators to strongly advocate similar services in Canada. In addition, American pay-television operators are beginning to provide broadcast pay-television services rather than the traditional cable delivered programs. Some of the broadcast signals are available in Canada although the necessary signal decoders are not currently available to Canadians. The pressures resulting from the American experience are compounded by the piecemeal or ad hoc introduction of Canadian pay-television services.

I am concerned about dealing with these pressures in a timely fashion since, in my view, pay-television offers a new and unique opportunity to support the Canadian broadcasting system. In particular, pay-television is a new opportunity to encourage the development of Canadian programs. However, if piecemeal Canadian services and American services from stations near the Canadian border occupy the Canadian market, it will be very difficult, perhaps impossible, to take advantage of the cultural and economic opportunities offered by pay-television.

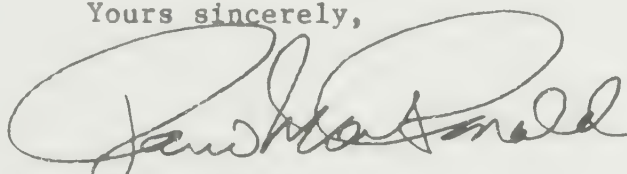
At the recent Federal-Provincial Conference of Communications Ministers, the Federal Government circulated a discussion paper dealing with the satellite distribution of television programming and pay-television. Contained in that paper was a suggested two-phased approach, as well as a broad set of suggested objectives and guidelines for each service. There was a consensus among ministers that federal and provincial officials should finalize these objectives and guidelines, with a view to assisting the Commission in establishing the terms of reference for the two-phased public hearing process. Officials met in Ottawa soon thereafter, to discuss the objectives and guidelines for both satellite distribution and pay-television. Not surprisingly, given the complexity of the issues involved, unanimity was not possible. However, I am pleased to note that a general consensus was reached, and the revised objectives and guidelines are attached.

In addition to the attached objectives and guidelines, I should like to add the following considerations. It is clear to me, as I know it is to the Commission, that the increased use of satellites and any Canadian pay-television service must make a significant and positive contribution to broadcasting in Canada and make effective use of Canadian resources. With regard to satellite distribution, it is my view that priority should be given to the delivery of basic Canadian broadcast services including educational programming, to those areas not presently receiving them. In support of this, however, consideration should be given to the inclusion of other Canadian signals like independent and specialized programming, and if necessary to the financial viability of the overall service, foreign signals. I would also welcome an indication from interested parties of the marketability of Canadian programs in foreign markets.

I should like to point out that if consideration is to be given to limited reception of U.S. satellite TV signals, it is important that all parties be made aware of certain international arrangements necessary for such a course of action to be acceptable. While the Government of Canada fully recognizes that this measure could complement Canadian satellite services, the Department of Communications can only license such services pursuant to the Radio Act once the Government of the United States is in agreement on an appropriate reciprocal arrangement. It would also be necessary under the terms of the Intelsat Agreement, to which Canada is a signatory, for Canada and the United States to consult with Intelsat.

The results of the anticipated public review should provide valuable assistance in formulating an appropriate policy and regulatory framework for dealing with the questions of satellite television services and pay-television. Because of the importance of these issues, I strongly believe that they should be considered in an environment in which the public interest remains paramount.

Yours sincerely,

A large, stylized handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to read 'David MacDonald', is written over the typed name.

David MacDonald



## SATELLITE DISTRIBUTION OF TELEVISION PROGRAMMING

### OBJECTIVES AND GUIDELINES

#### I. OBJECTIVES

1. To extend services to inadequately served areas of the country, in both official languages, in order to upgrade the level of service throughout Canada.
2. To provide a broad range of satellite television services in a manner that will respond to viewer preferences and demands, and will enhance Canadian broadcasting and program production, their future development, and the cultural sovereignty of the country.
3. To make more efficient use of satellite technology as one of several alternative transmission and distribution technologies.
4. To provide an attractive alternative to the reception of foreign satellite signals, and ensure the orderly development of satellite television reception in Canada.
5. To encourage equalization mechanisms between urban and rural/remote areas.
6. To develop satellite television services in a manner which takes into account the efforts of individual provincial governments to extend services within their boundaries.

#### II. GUIDELINES

1. The total satellite-delivered service made available to the Canadian viewer (including the possible reception of U.S. satellite signals) should be predominantly Canadian.
2. Pursuant to the above, any foreign signal importation and distribution should be subject to established regulatory and licensing procedures.
3. The introduction of satellite television services in Canada should be in harmony with policy initiatives designed to increase audiences for Canadian television programs, and the development of a more contemporary national broadcasting service.
4. Satellite television services should not impede the further development of local and regional programming. This is particularly important in regard to the cultural needs of the native peoples in northern areas.



## PAY-TELEVISION

### OBJECTIVES AND GUIDELINES

#### I. OBJECTIVES

1. Pay-television should satisfy the demands of the public for high quality and complementary programming, and should ensure benefits to Canadian program production and distribution.
2. Canadian program producers should have significant access to pay-television distribution systems.
3. Pay-television should provide new markets for Canadian programs, new sources of revenue for Canadian program producers, and new pools of investment funds for Canadian program production.
4. Canadian programs should be produced for pay-television which will appeal to Canadian audiences and some of which can be sold in international markets.
5. Pay-television programming should be available in Canada's two official languages and should ensure fair regional balance in the production and distribution of programming.
6. Pay-television should be distributed to all parts of Canada at equitable rates.
7. The development of pay-television in Canada should take place within a framework that fosters the orderly development of the industry and that accommodates the interests and priorities of provincial and federal governments in pay-television.

#### II. GUIDELINES

1. The introduction of pay-television should initially be through the vehicle of one national distributor but should also permit regional and local pay-television distributors to acquire programs and market them to local exhibitors.
2. The delivery of pay-television to the viewer would be undertaken by a licensed local exhibitor.
3. The distributors should arrange for the most appropriate method of delivering programs to local exhibitors. However, in order to ensure the availability of the service at equitable rates throughout Canada, satellite should be the preferred method for national delivery.
4. Distributors should be the primary mechanism for the acquisition of Canadian programs by means of investments, purchases, or other funding arrangements, and should market these programs to local exhibitors.

5. Program producers, distributors, and exhibitors should determine the most beneficial method of payment for viewing, and consideration should be given to both pay-per-channel and pay-per-program methods. In practice, a combination of pay-per-channel and pay-per-program might gradually evolve over time.
6. A realistic balance must be established between the audience viewing levels for Canadian and foreign product material.
7. Programs available via the present Canadian broadcasting system and in Canadian cinemas should not be siphoned onto a pay-television service.
8. Pay-television distributors could include mixed consortia, which may operate on a non-profit basis -- involving both public, Federal (e.g. CBC, CFDC) and Provincial, as well as private participation -- and could also include independent profit-making entities such as broadcasters, cable operators, symphony orchestras, professional sports organizations, entertainment industries, etc.
9. Cable licensees and other local delivery system operators must provide other potential exhibitors access to their systems on reasonable terms and conditions.



Chairman

President

November 26, 1979.

The Honourable David MacDonald, P.C., M.P.,  
Secretary of State and  
Minister of Communications,  
House of Commons,  
Ottawa, Ontario.

Dear Mr. MacDonald:

My colleagues and I would like to thank you for  
your letter of November 22.

Your understanding of the Commission's concerns  
is correct. We intend to convene a two-phased public pro-  
cess on how the number and variety of television services  
to northern and remote communities may best and most expe-  
ditiously be increased, and the issues of satellite distri-  
bution and pay-television are naturally expected to arise  
in that process. Phase I of the process will involve the  
establishment of a committee of the Commission which will  
report publicly to it. Phase II will involve such licensing  
hearings as may be held, in part as a result of the recom-  
mendations of the committee.

Your understanding is also correct regarding our  
determination to include provincial representatives during  
the first phase of this process, consistent with the ini-  
tiatives taken by the Commission in other proceedings (for  
example the recently completed proceeding dealing with the  
connecting agreement between the city of Prince Rupert and  
the British Columbia Telephone Company and the current pro-  
ceeding on trans-Canada telephone rates). It is intended

2 . . .

that the committee to be struck in Phase I will comprise seven members, half the members and the Chairman to be drawn from the Commission's membership and half to be composed of provincial representatives.

In the telecommunications proceedings noted above, the Commission invited the chairmen of provincial regulatory agencies to nominate representatives to the federal-provincial committees established. In this case, however, since no such agency regulates broadcasting matters, we would ask if you would be prepared to forward the names of provincial nominees to the Commission. Since only three such nominees would be selected, the CRTC membership on the committee would be selected to ensure the widest possible representation from across the country.

The job of the committee (which should be struck and begin its work by the end of the year) would be to report on how a greater variety of television services could be brought to the remote communities of Canada. It would involve a review of many questions including the optimal use of satellites, whether pay-TV ought to form part of a "package", what type of licences might be contemplated and a host of related questions. It is envisaged that the committee would conduct a public hearing to discuss proposals for service from various groups and individuals, which proposals would be expected to be as concrete and as specific as possible. The committee would also have the benefit of the views expressed in your letter, of the suggested objectives and guidelines prepared by federal and provincial officials, which you were good enough to attach to your letter, and of your advice on the international legal issues arising from certain satellite reception possibilities.

Following the committee's report, the Commission would decide upon a call for specific licence applications. This could involve pay-television (either as part of a "package" or separately), provided the Commission is satisfied that pay-television can make a significant and positive contribution to broadcasting in Canada and can make effective

use of Canadian resources. Should it be your intention to formulate revised suggested objectives and guidelines, these could presumably be introduced in a timely manner so that they could be fully discussed at the licensing public hearing.

It would be the Commission's intention to issue a public notice outlining the above procedures as soon as possible.

May I close by expressing my agreement and that of my colleagues with your view that these important matters should be considered in an environment in which the public interest remains paramount.

Yours truly,

A handwritten signature in cursive script, appearing to read 'C. Dalfen', followed by a long horizontal flourish line.

Charles M. Dalfen,  
Acting Chairman.





Minister of Communications

Ministre des Communications

Ottawa K1A 0C8

November 27, 1979

Mr. Charles Dalfen  
Acting Chairman  
Canadian Radio-television and  
Telecommunications Commission  
Central Building  
Terrasses de la Chaudière  
1 Promenade du Portage  
Hull, Quebec  
K1A 0N2

Dear Mr. Dalfen:

Thank you for your prompt response to the concerns I expressed to you with regard to the satellite distribution of television programming and pay-television. I am pleased that you concur with my view that these questions should be addressed on an urgent basis, and that the CRTC intends to convene a two-phased public hearing process in this regard.

I am equally pleased by your intention to establish a Committee with provincial representation to conduct the first phase of the process. I believe that such a Committee should have the widest possible representation from across the country. Accordingly, I have written to my provincial counterparts inviting them to select nominees and forward them to me. I have asked for one nominee from each province, which I will subsequently forward to the Commission for its consideration. I have informed provincial ministers that from this list of nominees the Commission will select three representatives to sit on the Committee.

Following this first phase of the process, it would be my intention to consult my provincial counterparts concerning the Committee's public report. During these consultations, it may be opportune to formulate revised suggested objectives and guidelines which could be introduced in a timely manner in order that they be discussed at the licensing public hearing.

In closing, I should like to thank you for your co-operation, and the prompt attention which you have given these matters.

Yours sincerely,

David MacDonald





Minister of Communications

Ministre des Communications

Ottawa K1A 0C8

November 28, 1979

☐

Dear Colleague:

I am writing to you regarding the work we started in Toronto on guidelines and objectives for pay television and television programme delivery by satellite which generated from the federal discussion paper. I am very pleased that the process which evolved from our initial discussions and the further co-operation from your officials represents a substantial achievement in furthering our mutual interests and concerns in Canadian communications. This spirit of co-operation has enabled us to proceed within the tight time frame I feel is required to meet the urgency of these issues.

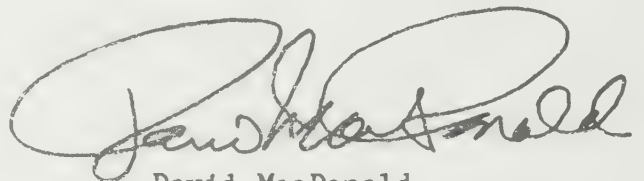
During our meeting you will recall that some provincial ministers had concerns about the process through which pay television and satellite distribution of television programmes would be introduced. I understand that these concerns were reiterated by officials during the meeting on November 8 and 9. In the letter I sent to the CRTC this week which forwarded our objectives and guidelines and suggested that the time is now appropriate to proceed with hearings on these issues I mentioned the provincial concerns. The CRTC has written back to me with a procedure which I think goes a considerable way to meeting these concerns, (copies are attached).

... 2

The CRTC has proposed that the phase one hearing be undertaken by a committee composed of six members and a chairman. Three of the members will be selected from nominees put forward by the provinces, the other three and the chairman will be from the CRTC. This approach is designed to ensure the widest possible representation from across the country, and given the fact that we wish to move ahead as quickly as possible I would appreciate receiving your provincial nomination within ten days so that the Commission can begin its work.

I look forward to receiving your province's nomination in the very near future and to the continuation of the co-operation which has so greatly facilitated the work in these areas.

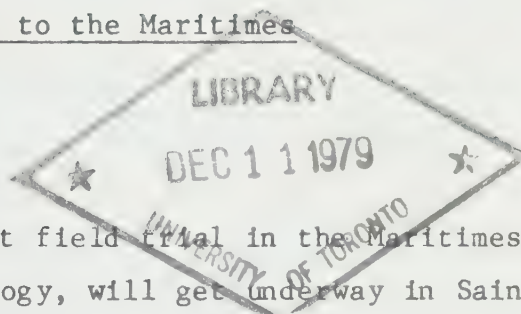
Yours sincerely,

A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to read 'David MacDonald', with a large, stylized loop at the beginning.

David MacDonald

# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## Telidon goes to the Maritimes



OTTAWA, November 30, 1979 -- The first field trial in the Maritimes using Telidon, the Canadian videotex technology, will get underway in Saint John, N.B., in late 1980, Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today. Telidon is a two-way television technology developed at the Department of Communications' research centre and is the most advanced of its kind in the world.

About 75 homes and a few businesses will be provided on a rotating basis with Telidon user terminals.

The field trial, which is expected to go on for one to two years, is being sponsored by the New Brunswick Telephone Company Ltd. and the federal Department of Communications (DOC).

The DOC will provide about 20 Telidon user terminals, one information provider terminal and technical assistance. N.B. Tel will provide the data base computer and the dedicated access network and will manage and operate the trial.

...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Users will be able to retrieve information from the data base for display on modified television sets. The information will be of local and national interest. Other services to be included in this trial are automatic and manual intrusion alarm systems, fire alarm, medical alert, meter reading, energy management systems and an automatic telephone testing service.

Mr. MacDonald said he was pleased a Telidon trial would be conducted in the Maritimes "to provide an Eastern perspective on what we believe is a technology of national importance as our economy becomes more and more information-based."

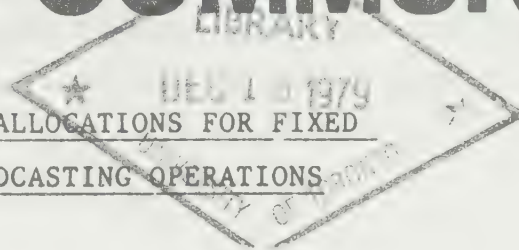
A Telidon demonstration model can be seen by arrangement with the DOC regional office in Moncton by telephoning Denis Martin at 858-2396.

The N.B. Tel experiment is the latest in a co-ordinated series of Telidon field trials across the country involving telecommunications carriers, cable companies and broadcasters. With the numbers of Telidon terminals growing daily, this experiment will bring the total number of committed terminals to 1,600. All field trials across the country are being co-ordinated by a Videotex Consultative Committee with representatives from government, industry and public interest groups.



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

## USE OF BROADCASTING SPECTRUM ALLOCATIONS FOR FIXED RELAYS IN SUPPORT OF BROADCASTING OPERATIONS



OTTAWA, December 5, 1979 -- Recently the number of applications submitted to the Department of Communications for the use of broadcasting channels in areas devoid of population solely for carriage of broadcast programming on a point-to-point basis to feed one or more conventional broadcast repeaters has increased substantially. This non-standard use of broadcast spectrum for relay purposes may in time have an adverse impact on the development and extension of the Canadian broadcasting system and Canadian telecommunication networks. For this reason, the Department has prepared a discussion paper for public comment whose objective is to suggest a policy under which such systems would generally be authorized.

Copies of this paper, entitled Use of Broadcasting Spectrum Allocations for Fixed Relays in Support of Broadcasting Operations, may be obtained from Information Services, Department of Communications, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0C8 or from DOC regional offices in Vancouver Winnipeg, Toronto, Montreal and Moncton.

The Department is now inviting submissions from all interested parties on this discussion paper. Submissions should be addressed to the Director General, National Telecommunications Branch, at the above address and, to ensure consideration, should be postmarked not later than 120 days from the date of

... 2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



publication of a formal notice on this subject (DGTN-004-79) in the Canada Gazette Part 1. Copies of these submissions will be made available for public inspection at the Department of Communications library, Room 1420, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, and at all of the DOC regional offices as listed above.

Reference: Parke Davis (613-996-1491)



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

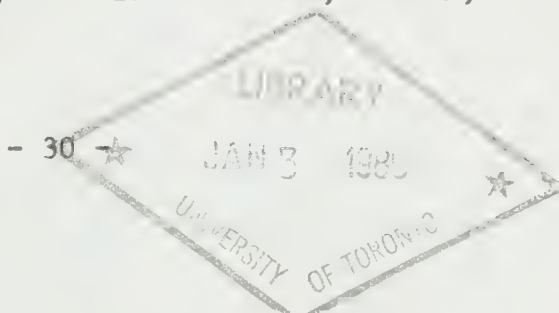
## The Utilization of the Radio Spectrum in the Range 0.890-10.68 GHz

OTTAWA, December 12, 1979 -- In August 1979, the federal Department of Communications (DOC) published a discussion paper entitled: The Utilization of the Radio Spectrum in the Range 0.890-10.68 GHz. The paper, a major review of the bands in reference, invited comments and submissions as part of a three stage process leading towards an overall policy for the use of specific bands covered in the review.

The Department initially stipulated a 120-day response period from the date of issue of the paper for public review and comment. Recently, there have been requests by several entities, to extend the time permitted for submissions on this very important review.

Accordingly, the deadline for responses and submissions relating to this review, originally scheduled for December 21, 1979, has now been extended to March 1, 1980. Submissions should now be postmarked not later than March 1, 1980 and should be mailed to: The Director-General, National Telecommunications Branch, Department of Communications, 300 Slater Street, Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0C8.

Reference: A.W. Adey 996-1491  
M. Hunt 996-6761



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



# NEWS RELEASE COMMUNIQUE

CAI  
CFC  
N26

## British Columbia, Yukon and Northwest Territories Residents to get direct-to-home satellite TV in Federal Pilot Project

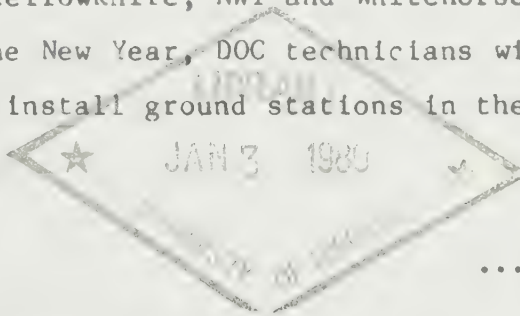
VANCOUVER, B.C., December 13, 1979 -- A national pilot project that has made Canada the first country in the world to install small satellite earth stations at private homes to test direct satellite TV broadcasting is being extended to northern British Columbia, the Yukon and the Northwest Territories.

First full transmissions to the region will start Friday, federal Communications Minister David MacDonald announced today.

The complete daily service of both the CBC's Pacific TV network and Vancouver's CTV affiliate, CHAN, will be relayed via DOC-leased capacity on Telesat Canada's Anik B satellite to individual homes, small cable TV systems, community halls and low-power rebroadcasting stations in some 45 remote locations, all with only limited or poor-quality reception.

The 1.8 metre Canadian-made earth terminals purchased by DOC for the program will be loaned free of charge to users for the duration of this Western phase of the federal government's Anik B satellite broadcasting pilot project.

Home sites in the B.C. communities of Cassiar, Dease Lake, Telegraph Creek, Anahim Lake and Tatla Lake will be among the first to be served, with stations also going in almost immediately at Yellowknife, NWT and Whitehorse, in the Yukon. It's expected that, before the New Year, DOC technicians will also reach Atlin, Hazelton and Stewart, B.C. to install ground stations in these communities.



...2



Government of Canada  
Department of Communications

Information Services  
300 Slater Street  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185

Gouvernement du Canada  
Ministère des Communications

Services d'information  
300, rue Slater  
Ottawa K1A 0C8  
(613) 995-8185



Through its Hermes communications technology satellite, related work in its own research laboratories and support of private industry, DOC has pioneered the use of both the 14/12 Gigahertz satellite TV band being used for the tests and the technology of the user-oriented, low-cost mini-earth stations (as small as 60 centimetres in diameter) which can be used in this higher frequency band.

"Now that we have pioneered the technology, we in Canada must make the best possible use of our lead in it to bring more and better Canadian television program services to people still not provided with basic levels of service that Southern Canada takes for granted," said Mr. MacDonald.

"If this project is a success, and we decide to develop further direct-to-home satellite TV broadcasting, millions of Canadians stand to benefit," the Minister added.

(The Minister and the CRTC announced November 29 that the commission plans to hold a two-phased hearing as soon as possible to deal with extension of television services to remote areas and the satellite distribution of programming, as well as the introduction of pay-TV in Canada.)

The current Anik-B direct broadcasting satellite (DBS) trials are enabling the widest possible evaluation of the viability of such a service on a commercial basis and giving the new generation of Canadian-designed and manufactured earth terminals a thorough check-out in a broad range of environmental and climatic settings. They have been built by SED Ltd., of Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, following design work by DOC.

This new Western phase of the project is being made possible through the co-operation of DOC, the BC department of universities, science and communications, the CBC, British Columbia Television (BCTV -- the CTV affiliate) and the governments of the Yukon and Northwest Territories.

The program was inaugurated September 25 when several dozen similar communities in Northwestern Ontario began receiving 12 hours of daily programming from the provincial educational broadcasting agency, TV Ontario. It will continue, in both Ontario and the west, until at least next May 31st.

A committee composed of representatives of DOC, BCTV, the CBC and the provincial and territorial governments involved is continuing its work with community representatives throughout the region to finalize the list of homeowners and communities that will get trial service.

Reference: J.M. Bryan  
Media Relations and Public Liaison, DOC-HQ, Ottawa  
(613) 995-8185

or

John Thwaites, Socio-Economic Advisor, DOC Pacific Region  
(604) 666-6261







3 1761 11551255 0

